Introduction

1) Complete the questions with these words :-

(a lot of – how to – if – located – mustn't – quietly – used to – which)

1. What ………………. you do in an exam ?

2. What should you do …………… you feel ill at school ?

3. What do you call someone who knows ……………. paint very well ?

4. Which city is …………….. on the Suez Canal ?

5. Who ……………… think that an animal's eye helped blind people ?

6. What fast food has …………… fat in it ?

7. What do you call the material ……………. people often use to make clothes ?

8. In which building do people usually sit and read ………………….. ?

(Facts)

1- I mustn't talk loudly in in an exam.

2- I should tell the teacher if I feel ill.

3- I call someone who knows how to paint very well an artist.

4- The city which is located on the Suez Canal is Port Said.

5- The ancient Egyptians thought that an animal's eye helped blind people.

6- The fast food which has a lot of fat is Pizza.

7- The material which people often use to make clothes is cotton.

8- The library is the building in which people usually sit and read quietly.

---

3) Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes.

1- As we **walk** into the museum, we saw a lot of old statues. (………………………)

2- My sister bought a **cotton, new, pretty** dress. (………………………)

3- Tarek wants the blue shoes, but I prefer the brown **one**. (………………………)

4- Look at those dark clouds ! I think it **is raining** soon. (………………………)

5- Hundreds of fish **caught** by the fishermen every week. (………………………)

Listening : Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

(1) In the foreground, I can see some shops. There is a man selling clothes on the right.

---

(2) A: Good morning. How can I help you ?

B : Hello. Can you tell me what time the museum opens ?

A : Of course. It opens at 9 a.m.

B : Can I buy tickets there ?

A : Certainly or you can buy them online.

---

(3) Beat two eggs in a bowl with a little milk. Add some salt. Pour the eggs into a frying pan and cook them in a little butter. When it is ready, serve it with salad.

---

(4) A : Hi, Leila. I was wondering if you would like to watch a film at my house this evening ?

B : Thanks Sara. What time should I come ?

A : About seven.

B : Shall I bring anything ?

A : Could you bring some orange juice ?

B : Of course. See you later.

---

(5) A : Can I help you ?

B : Yes. I like this red dress. Could I try it on ?

A : Of course. The changing room is there.

B : Does it fit ?

A : No. Do you have a smaller size ?

B : We don't have smaller red dresses, but we have a smaller one in blue.

A : Thanks. I'll take it.

الأسئلة التالية على الفقرات السابقة بترتيب الفقرات:-

1. The boy is …………. .

a) describing a photo **b) selling clothes**
c) going to the shops **d) buying something**

2. The man is ……………. .

a) buying tickets at a museum. **b) helping a woman.**

c) asking for information on the phone **d) describing a visit to a museum yesterday**

3. The woman is …………….. .

a) making a salad **b) eating lunch**

c) saying how to make a salad **d) saying how to make an omelette**

4. Sara is …………….. .

a) cooking food for Leila **b) inviting Leila to her house**

c) making a film **d) going to Leila's house this evening**

<u>(6) Read the text, then answer the questions :-</u>

What clothes do you like to wear? Most people can choose the clothes that they wear each day, but in some jobs you must wear special clothes. For example, firefighters must wear clothes that are made of special material that does not burn. If you are a doctor, you should sometimes wear special clothes and masks that stop you from becoming ill. Many other people, such as engineers and builders, must wear hats and big boots when they are working.

1. What is different about the clothes firefighters wear ?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

2. How do the clothes that doctors wear help them ?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

3. What do engineers and builders often wear ?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

4. Why do you think they wear these clothes ?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

5. In which other jobs do people wear special clothes, and why ?

……………………………………………………………………………………………

---

(7) Write in your notebook about a person with a great job.

*** What makes this job special ?**

*** Why do you think the person does this job ?**

*** Say if you would like to do this job and why.**

Unit (1) Around town

aquarium (n)	متحف الاحياء المائية/ حوض سمك	museum (n)	مُتحف
bank (n)	بنك	restaurant (n)	مطعم
lake (n)	بحيرة	train station (n)	محطة قطار
botanical gardens (n)	حدائق نباتية	corner (n)	زاوية – ناصية – ركن
library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة والإستعارة)	station (n)	محطة (قطار أو أتوبيس)
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى	facts (n)	حقائق
monument (n)	أثر (تاريخى)	directions (n)	إتجاهات
peaceful (adj)	مسالم – هادئ	borrow × lend (v)	يُقرض يستعير – يستلف ×
traffic (n)	حركة المرور	shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق
especially (adv)	خصوصاً / خاصة	turn(ed) (v) (n)	يتجه / دور
ruins (n)	بقايا / أطلال	plants (n)	نباتات
pollution (n)	تلوث	natural	طبيعى
nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية	area (n)	منطقة – مساحة
Sphinx (n)	أبو الهول	include (v)	يشمل – يتضمن
village (n)	قرية	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق - معلومات
grandparents (n)	الأجداد	event (n)	حدث
useful (adj)	مفيد - نافع	exhibition (n)	معرض – عرض
space (n)	فضاء	comfortable (adj)	مُريح
ferry (n)	معدية (النهر) – عَبارة	passengers (n)	مسافرين – رُكاب
valley (n)	وادى	tram (n)	الترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
below (adv), (prep)	أسفل - أدنى	metro (n)	قطار مترو الأنفاق
metro map (n)	خريطة المترو	metro station (n)	محطة مترو
platform (n)	رصيف القطار	paintings (n)	لوحات / رسومات
objects (n)	أشياء – مقتنيات	travel (led) (v)	يسافر
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	crosswords (n)	كلمات متقاطعة
floor (n)	طابق – أرضية	electric (adj)	كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)
journey (n)	رحلة (طويلة)	stop (n)	نقطة توقف – محطة (أتوبيس – أو قطار)
chat (ted) (v) ,(n)	يدردش – حديث ودى – دردشة	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
engineering works (n)	أعمال هندسية	guard (n)	حارس
university (n)	جامعة	transport (n)	النقل / المواصلات
environment (n)	البيئة	type (n)	نوع

cross (ed) (v)	يعبر	**prefer (red) (v)**	يُفضل
railway (n)	خط سكة حديد	**rails (n)**	قضبان السكة الحديدية
energy (n)	طاقة	**central (adj)**	رئيسى – مركزى
Sydney (n)	مدينة سيدنى (إستراليا)	**Bondi (n)**	شاطئ بوندى(أشهر شواطئ إستراليا)
jewellery (n)	*مجوهرات*	***indoors (adv)***	داخل المنزل
pottery (n)	*أوانى فخارية – صناعة الفخار*	***suggestion (n)***	إقتراح
century (n)	*قرن (١٠٠ سنة)*	***outdoors (adv)***	خارج المنزل
respond (ed) (v)	*يستجيب / يرد*	***describe (d) (v)***	يصف
disagree (d) (v)	*يرفض*	***opinions (n)***	آراء
politely (adv)	*بطريقة مهذبة*	***feelings (n)***	مشاعر
suggest (ed) (v)	*يقترح*	***final (adj)***	نهائى
arrange (d) (v)	*يرتب*	***decision (n)***	قرار
swimming pool (n)	*حمام سباحة*	***reply (ied) (v)***	يرد
El-Orman Gardens (n)	*حدائق الأورمان(بالجيزة)*	***Khedive (n)***	الخديوى(لقب حاكم مصر)
wild (adj)	*برى*	***online (adj), (adv)***	متصل بالإنترنت
trip (n)	*رحلة (قصيرة)*	***ready (adj)***	جاهز – مستعد
review (n)	*مقال نقدى*	***invitation (n)***	دعوة
correctly (adv)	*بطريقة صحيحة*	***nearby (adj)***	قريب
easily (adv)	*بسهولة*	***invite (d) (v)***	يدعو
lovely (adj)	*جميل – جذاب*	***gardener (n)***	بستانى / جناينى

Cities and important places المدن والأماكن الهامة

Ismailia	مدينة الإسماعيلية	Lake Timsah	بحيرة التمساح
the Suez Canal	قناة السويس	Natural Science Museum	متحف العلوم الطبيعية
Port Said	مدينة بورسعيد	Giza	مدينة الجيزة

Conjugation of Irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع		**Past الماضى**	**P.P. التصريف الثالث**
take	يأخذ – يستقل	took	taken
go	يذهب	went	gone
run	يجرى	ran	run
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى	saw	seen
build	يبنى	built	built
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
leave	يغادر – يرحل	left	left
show	يوضح / يُبين	showed	shown

get (to) يصل – يحصل على	got (to)	got (to)
sit يجلس	sat	sat
catch يلحق – يصطاد	caught	caught
find يجد	found	found
meet up يتقابل	met	met
send يُرسل	sent	sent
bring يُحضر	brought	brought
break يكسر – ينكسر	broke	broken
wear يرتدى	wore	worn

Study the definitions إدرس هذه التعريفات جيداً

aquarium	you can see beautiful fish there.
bank	you can borrow and save money there.
botanical gardens	you can see trees and other interesting plants there.
library	you can borrow and read books there.
sports centre	you can play volleyball, tennis and other sports there.
lake	a large area of water with land around it.
monument	something that people build to remember an important person or event.
peaceful	calm and quiet.
traffic	cars, lorries and motorbikes that use a road.
especially	more than usual.
* platform	you can catch a train from here.
map	you can use this to follow directions.
exhibition	you can go there to see paintings, photographs, objects, etc.
timetable	you can use this to find when a train or bus leaves.
metro	you can use this to travel in a city. Sometimes it travels underground

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	things يقوم بعمل أشياء	go	swimming يذهب للسباحة
	the same things يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء		shopping يذهب للتسوق
	homework يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزل	give	directions يعطى الإتجاهات
take	the train يستقل القطار		advice ينصح
	the second road يأخذ اتجاه الطريق الثانى	get	home يصل للمنزل
	four hour يستغرق أربع ساعات		back يعود / يرجع
do	work يقوم بعمل	follow	directions يتبع الإتجاهات
	something يقوم بعمل شئ ما		the rules يتبع القواعد
	sports يقوم بممارسة رياضة	make	a decision يتخذ قرار
	an activity يمارس نشاط		a suggestion يقدم إقتراح
			a plan يخطط
			lunch يُعد وجبة الغداء
			sure يتأكد

General notes on Reading & Listening

1) since

ex : - We've lived here since 2009. منذ وبعدها بداية المدة

ex : - I haven't phoned Habiba since she left to Cairo. منذ ويأتى بعدها جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

ex : - Since traffic is low, there is much pollution. لأن وبعدها جملة كاملة_

---

2) around – round

*around (adv) , (prep) ١. تستخدم للتقريب بمعنى (حوالى)

ex : (SB) Around 350, 000 people live in Ismailia.

- The moon goes round / around the Earth. ٢. تستخدم كظرف أو حرف جر لتحديد المكان أو الإتجاه بمعنى (حول)

*round (adj) (الشكل) دائرى ex : - The sun is round.

---

(3) interesting – interested – interest

*** interesting (adj)** رائع - شيق

Ex : -(SB) There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and a lot of gardens in Ismailia.

*** interested (adj) in + (inf. + ing) / noun** إسم

Ex : - I'm interested in reading short stories.

- He is interested in science.

*** interest (v) , (n)** يُثير إهتمام / إهتمام

Ex : - Science interests me a lot. (فعل) Ex : - My interests are music and painting. (إسم)

(4) go shopping = do the (my/her/his/ their) shopping. يستخدم هذان التعبريان بمعنى يتسوق

Ex : - I always go shopping / do the shopping on Friday.

---

(5) reach (ed) – arrive (d) – get (got) يصل إلى مكان

*** reach** يصل إلى (مكان) ولا يأتى بعدها حرف جر

Ex : - (SB) The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea.

*** arrive** يصل (بدون مفعول)

Ex : - She arrived yesterday ? Ex : When did you arrive ?

*** arrive at** يصل إلى مكان صغير (قرية – مدينة صغيرة – مدرسة – محطة - ... إلخ)

Ex : - He arrived at school on time.

*** arrive in** يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة كبيرة أو دولة)

Ex : - They arrived in Alexandria to spend the summer holiday.

*** get to** يصل إلى مكان ما (بصعوبه)

Ex : - He gets to his work late every day. Ex : How can I get to the train station ?

---

(6) peace / peaceful

*** peace (n)** السلام × **war** الحرب سلام (إسم لا يُعد) × حرب (إسم يُعد)

Ex : - All people don't like wars. They'd like to live in peace.

*** peaceful (adj)** سلمى – مُسالم – ينعم بالسلام – هادئ

Ex : - Ismailia is a peaceful place to live in. (ينعم بالسلام)

Ex : - Elham is a peaceful woman. She doesn't make troubles. (هادئ)

---

1) take (وقت) يأخذ / يستغرق

Ex : - He forgot to take his English book.

Ex: - The journey to Port Said takes four hours by train.

---

2) stop (v) / (n) يتوقف – محطة (قطار – أتوبيس)

Ex : - Express trains don't stop at all stations.

Ex : (**SB**) How many stops are there by metro ?

---

3) look forward to + (inf.+ing) / (n) يتطلع إلى

Ex : (**SB**) I'm looking forward to seeing you later.

Ex : - Sally is looking forward to her weekend.

4) floor / flour أرضية – دقيق

*** floor (n)** أرضية – طابق

Ex: - Sara is sweeping the floor.

Ex: - Some buses in Alexandria have two floors.

Ex: - I live **on** the third **floor**.

*** flour (n)** دقيق

Ex : Bread and cakes are made from flour.

---

5) It's + adj. صفة **+ to + inf.** (المصدر)...

Ex : - It's easy to use my new mobile.

---

6) see لاحظ إستخدام الفعل

Ex : - I saw Hend **<u>watering</u>** the flowers.

عند إستخدام **(inf. + ing)** بعد المفعول به، فنحن نقصد رؤية الحدث فى منتصفه ولم نشاهد بدايته .

ex : - I saw Hend water the flowers.

عند إستخدام **.inf** (المصدر) بعد المفعول فنحن نقصد رؤية الحدث من البداية حتى النهاية.

---

٧) يستخدم الفعل مضاف له **ing-** بعد الأفعال الأتية :-

(love – like – prefer – enjoy)

ex : -(SB) I **love travelling** by train.

ولكن إذا سبقت تلك الأفعال بـ **(would)** نستخدم **(to+inf.)** المصدر.

ex: **-(SB) Would** you **like to come** to the space exhibition ?

---

8) platform / pavement رصيف المحطة / رصيف الشارع

*** platform (n)** رصيف محطة القطار

Ex : - The passengers are waiting for the train at platform 5.

*** pavement (n) = sidewalk (n)** رصيف (الشارع)

Ex : - People should walk on the pavement to avoid accidents.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

find some facts about	يكتشف بعض الحقائق عن	**with beaches around it**	يوجد شواطئ حولها
take the second road	يتخذ الطريق الثانى	**have tennis lessons**	يأخذ دروس فى التنس
on the lake	على شاطئ البحيرة	**look like**	يُشبه
for about 20 metres	لمسافة حوالى عشرين متراً	**It is a good place to..**	إنه مكان جيد لـ..
run through	يجرى خلال – يمر عبر	**more than usual**	أكثر من المُعتاد
There are a lot of things to do.	يوجد الكثير لتفعله.	**find places on the map**	يجد أماكن على الخريطة
		come home by	يأتى للمنزل بواسطة

Lessons (3&4)

by metro	بإستخدام مترو الانفاق	**look out of the window**	ينظر من خلال النافذة
at the Science Museum	فى مُتحف العلوم	**busy cities**	مدن مزدحمة
get to the museum	يصل إلى المُتحف	**travel around the city**	يتجول حول المدينة
How long does the journey take by metro ?	كم المدة التى تستغرقها الرحلة بإستخدام مترو الأنفاق ؟	**better for the environment**	أفضل للبيئة
leave at	يغادر فى وقت ..	**sit at the top**	يجلس فى الأعلى
catch a train	يلحق بالقطار	**good for**	مفيد لـ / جيد لـ
get a train	يستقل قطار	**It's more fun !**	إنها أكثر متعة !
go upstairs	يصعد للطابق الأعلى	**across water**	عبر المياه
The best way to + inf. ..	أفضل طريقة لـ	**all parts of the city**	كل أجزاء المدينة
It's a great way to travel !	إنها طريقة رائعة للسفر !	**on the water**	على المياه
meet up	يلتقى – يتقابل	**What's special about ?**	ماذا يُميز .. ؟ ما المميز حول ...؟
agree with	يتفق مع	**think about**	يفكر فى

disagree politely	يرفض بإسلوب مُهذب	go on a ferry	يذهب بإستخدام المعدية
play a computer game	يلعب لعبة حاسوب	on the river	فى النهر
agree on an activity	يوافق على القيام بنشاط	for lunch	لوجبة الغداء
give an answer to	يعطى إجابة	Thank you for asking.	شكراً على السؤال.
reply to	يرد على	That sounds like a great idea.	هذه تبدو فكرة رائعة.

Exercises :-

1. Luxor has a lot of interesting .... One of them is Karnak Temple.
   a) moments b) monuments c) dictionaries d) corners
2. Ahmed is a .... student. This means he is calm and quiet.
   a) peaceful b) careless c) helpful d) noisy
3. You can see a lot of beautiful fish in the ....
   a) museum b) bank c) library d) aquarium
4. If you want to see trees and other interesting plants, you can go to .... gardens.
   a) botanical b) electrical c) sports d) balanced
5. My uncle is very good at sports, ... at handball.
   a) hardly b) just c) especially d) only

SB/WB

6. There was a lot of .... on the roads this morning, so Mr. Ahmad was late for work.
   a) care b) peace c) traffic d) juice
7. This machine does many things. It is very ....
   a) peaceful b) useful c) careful d) helpless
8. My city has lots of .... monuments. I like them very much.
   a) interested b) silly c) interesting d) ugly

---

9. I can .... two books from the Public Library in my area.
   a) lend b) give c) borrow d) leave
10. We have four ....; north, south, east and west.
   a) secrets b) seasons c) directions d) dictionaries
11. I'm interested in animals, so I love going to the Natural .... Museum.
   a) Geology b) Scientific c) Science d) History
12. Lake Timsah is a beautiful lake .... beaches around it.
   a) with b) of c) from d) to
13. Rahma has read .... 12 short stories.
   a) round b) around c) rounded d) bound

14. Judy always goes .... in the pool.
  a) swim b) to swim c) swam d) swimming
15. The Nile .... through the city of Benha.
  a) walks b) flies c) runs d) swims
16. Adam .... to his work late yesterday.
  a) arrived b) got c) reached d) found

Vocabulary Study :- Synonyms and Antonyms المترادفات والمتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف لها (نفس المعنى)	Antonym / opposite المضاد للكلمة
attractive جذاب / جميل	beautiful	unattractive / ugly
modern حديث / عصرى	new / up-to-date	old / ancient
interesting شيق / رائع	lovely / exciting	boring
peaceful مُسالم – هادئ	calm / quiet	noisy
famous مشهور	well known	unknown
borrow يستعير – يستلف	take	lend
leave يغادر	go – move away	arrive
show يوضح – يُبين	display – exhibit	hide – cover يخبئ – يغطى
start يبدأ	begin	end – finish
below أسفل	under – down	above
prefer يفضل	like better	hate
usual مألوف – عادى	normal – familiar	unusual
nearest الأقرب	closest	farthest
comfortable مريح	relaxing	uncomfortable
easy to use سهل الإستخدام	user-friendly	difficult to use
unpolluting غير ملوث	good for the environment	polluting
upstairs الدور العلوى	the higher floor	downstairs
outside خارجى	outdoor	inside / indoor
outdoors خارج المنزل	outside	indoors
politely بطريقة مهذبة	kindly – nicely	impolitely
remember يتذكر	memorize	forget
agree يوافق	accept / allow	disagree / refuse

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The word "peaceful" can be replaced by ....
  a) ugly and dirty b) calm and quiet
  c) quiet and dirty d) ugly and calm
2. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. The word "attractive" means ....
  a) not good b) dirty c) beautiful d) ugly
3. The word "............" can be the opposite of "boring".
  a) near b) interested c) excited d) interesting
4. You can make an adjective from the verb "use" by adding ....
  a) – al b) – ful c) – le d) – tion

5. We can form the word "peaceful" from the noun ....

a) pace b) peace c) pack d) pass

6. To give the opposite of the word "natural", we add the prefix ....

a) dis - b) un - c) ir - d) im –

---

1. The antonym of the word "leave" is to ....

a) arrive b) drive c) ride d) dry

2. The words "peaceful" and "noisy" are ....

a) opposites b) equals c) synonyms d) prefixes

3. When something isn't good for the environment, then it is ....

a) lazy b) active c) effective d) polluting

4. The antonym of the word "nearest" is ....

a) fastest b) biggest c) farthest d) highest

5. We can form an adjective when we add "............." to the word "interest".

a) – able b) – ing c) –est d) – less

6. the word "engineering" is a/an ....

a) preposition b) verb c) noun d) adverb

7. The synonym of "politely" is ....

a) hardly b) impolitely c) excitedly d) kindly

8. The word "outdoor" is the opposite of "...............".

a) outdoors b) outside c) indoor d) indoors

9. Memorize has the same meaning of "...............".

a) forgive b) forget c) reply d) remember

10. The noun "north" can be an adjective by adding ....

a) –er b) –ern c) –ing d) –ed

11. To make the negative form of "politely", we add the prefix ....

a) in- b) un- c) em- d) im-

---

1. The shopping centre is .... the train station.

(straight – corner – opposite – next)

2. The theatre is .... the aquarium and the museum.

(between – next – on – in)

3. I get up .... nine o'clock every day.

(in – at – on – from)

4. I often play games with my cousins .... the afternoon.

(at – on – in – from)

5. .... Saturdays, I like to stay at home.

(On – At – From – Into)

---

1) SB/WB Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The museum is .... the corner opposite the hospital.

a) in b) on c) next d) between

2. I always go to the park .... Saturday mornings.

a) on b) of c) at d) in

3. .... lunchtime, I visit my cousins.

a) On b) In c) At d) Over

4. The sports centre is .... the aquarium and the hospital.

a) next to b) opposite c) between d) on

---

2) SB/WB Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Fady goes shopping ....(on) the afternoon.

2- Write what you do ....(in) the weekend.

3- The library is ....(opposite) to the bank.
4- ....(At) Sundays, I get up at 7 am.

5. She usually gets up .... half past eight.
a) in b) for c) up d) at
6. Lucy was standing .... the right of the picture.
a) up b) on c) next d) of
7. From the station, go straight .... for about 10 metres.
a) in b) of c) on d) at
8. I did the crossword .... five minutes.
a) on b) in c) at d) over
9. They like to visit Luxor .... winter.
a) of b) at c) in d) on

2) SB/WB Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. They travel to Dahab ....(at) holiday.
2. He's not here ....(in) the moment.
3. My house is on the ....(opposite) of the street corner.
4. Farmers usually start working ....(in) dawn.
5. Clothes were very different ....(at) the 18th century.
6. The bus arrives ....(on) ten minutes.

(opposite – corner – monuments – interested – between)

1. There are many attractive .... in Egypt.
2. The museum is on the ...., opposite the library.
3. The shopping centre is .... the station.
4. She is .... in reading and watching films.

(Lessons 3&4)

1. I think travelling by train is very .... It's my favourite.
a) boring b) messy c) comfortable d) hard
2. If you go to the space .... today, you'll learn about the science of space.
a) street b) exhibition c) room d) gallery
3. During the train journey, we can see .... crossing the Nile.
a) ferries b) cities c) boxes d) floors
4. .... must book tickets before getting on the train.
a) Babies b) Rabbits c) Passengers d) Plants
5. Lots of people in Alexandria use the .... to travel around the city.
a) plane b) tram c) ground d) ferry
6. (WB) The .... is between two mountains.
a) lake b) island c) valley d) boat

7. (WB) You can use the .... to travel in a city. Sometimes it travels underground.

a) plane b) tram c) taxi d) metro

8. (WB) You can use .... to find when a train or bus leaves.

a) pavement b) diary c) timetable d) platform

---

9. Trains, buses and ferries are types of ....

a) boats b) plants c) transport d) technology

10. A train uses .... to move.

a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules

11. .... cities are always polluted.

a) Free b) Busy c) Empty d) Peaceful

12. Dina is hurrying to .... the bus to school.

a) hold b) bring c) catch d) reach

13. Milk is good .... building strong bodies.

a) at b) to c) by d) for

14. Which .... is your flat on ?

a) platform b) flour c) floor d) flower

15. It's important .... regularly. بإنتظام

a) exercises b) to exercise c) exercising d) exercises

16. How can we get .... the Egyptian Museu, Ahmad ?

a) to b) off c) from d) at

---

1. No one liked Adel's .... about the trip. All his friends disagreed.

a) suggestion b) problem c) information d) pool

2. In need comfortable shoes today because I'm going to walk ....

a) indoors b) outdoors c) outdoor d) indoor

3. My mother has some beautiful ...., which she got from her mother when she got married.

a) jewllery b) kitchens c) rooms d) countries

4. We need to .... to meet up next week.

a) keep b) arrange c) bring d) listen

5. My friend, Ali .... me to his sister's wedding party.

a) invited b) invented c) deleted d) replied

6. You should speak to old people ....

a) impolitely b) politely c) quickly d) replied

7. A/An .... is a person who works in a garden as a job.

a) passenger b) guide c) gardener d) volunteer

8. My final .... is to join the Faculty of Arts.

a) invitation b) invention c) feeling d) decision

9. What time are we going to meet ....tomorrow ?

a) out b) up c) down d) into

10. Thank you .... asking me to come to the party.

a) of b) about c) at d) for

11. Which computer game would you like to ...., Basim ?

a) play b) make c) do d) take

12. The decision my brother has .... wasn't easy.

a) done b) made c) given d) sent

13. My mother found the bakery ...., so she bought fresh bread.

a) open b) opened c) closed d) closet

---

1. (SB) What time does the lesson .... ?

a) starts b) started c) start d) starting

2. (SB) When .... this plane arrive in Cairo ?

a) is b) do c) does d) has

3. (SB) Which metro station .... they need to go to ?

a) does b) do c) is d) are

4. (WB) The train .... in Luxor at 23.15.

a) arrive b) arrives c) will arrive d) is going to arrive

5. .... does the journey take by bus ?

a) How often b) How long c) How many d) How far

6. I .... to go to Luxor. What time does the bus leave ?

a) wants b) want c) wanted d) will want

7. He .... misses the bus to work.

a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) never

8. .... Heba travel in a car or in a taxi ?

a) Do b) Is c) Does d) Are

9. The Space Exhibition .... at 9.30 tomorrow. We're going by metro.

a) start b) starts c) started d) starting

10. What time does the exhibition .... ? -It finishes at 10.30 pm.

a) finish b) finishes c) finished d) finishing

11. The train to Port Said .... this station at 3.15 pm tomorrow.

a) left b) leave c) leaves d) leaving

12. (WB) The children played .... today because it was very hot outside.

a) outdoor b) outdoors c) indoors d) indoor

13. (WB) Hisham was born in 1981, which was in the last ....

a) decision b) year c) century d) area

14. (SB) Be careful in that shop. It sells .... which breaks easily.

a) pottery b) jewllery c) buildings d) chemicals

---

1. A : .... don't we meet in front of the museum ? B : Ok. That's a good idea.

a) What b) When c) Why d) Where

2. What about .... to the zoo ?

a) go b) going c) goes d) went

3. Salma'd prefer .... pizza with chicken.

a) to eat b) eating c) eats d) ate

4. It would be nice .... see this film. It's interesting.

a) to b) for c) at d) with

---

1. (SB) .... don't you come to my house ?

a) Who b) What c) Why d) Where

2. (WB) .... about the park ?

a) How b) Why c) When d) Where

3. (SB) What time shall we .... to get you ?

a) comes b) come c) coming d) came

4. (WB) Why don't we .... by the bridge ?

a) meet b) meeting c) to meet d) meets

5. (SB) What .... Reem like to see at the museum ?

a) can b) would c) shall d) be

6. A: Would you like .... some juice ? B : Sure.

a) to drinking b) to drink c) drinks d) drink

7. Why .... we play football together? - That's a great idea.

a) don't b) didn't c) haven't d) mustn't

8. I'd prefer .... tea without milk.

a) drinks b) to drinking c) drinking d) to drink

9. It would .... nice to play some sport.

a) am b) is c) are d) be

10. What about .... a cup of green tea with me today ?

a) have b) having c) to have d) had

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1-(SB) It's an hour before the exhibition ....(start).

2-(SB) How many stops ....(there are) by metro ?

3-(WB) ....(Do) a ferry take people across the desert or across water ?

4-(WB) The train usually ....(take) six hours to reach Aswan.

5- What time ....(do) the film start ?

6- Ahemd's uncle ....(doesn't) comes late.

7- Where ....(does) Ayman and Ashraf want to go ?

8- What ....(be) the best place to visit in Aswan ?

9- We usually ....(travelling) by train to Aswan.

1. (SB) ....(When) about the museum ?

2. (SB) I'd prefer to ....(going) somewhere indoors.

3. (WB) I think it would ....(is) nice to go on a ferry.

4. Where would you like ....(going) ?

5. Let's ....(had) dinner at the Italian restaurant.

6. They prefer ....(read) in the library to home.

7. Shall we ....(playing) in the garden ?

1. You can see ....crossing the Nile.

a) trains b) metros c) ferries d) buses

2. The pronoun (I) in the first paragraph refers to ....

a) Hana b) Riham c) Khalid d) Mai

3. The expression "look forward to" in the text means ....

a) drive b) hope c) donate d) delete

Read and complete :-

(sports centre – library – does – do – tram)

1. Lots of people in Alexandria use the ....

2. How often .... you go to the library ?

3. You can borrow books from the ....

4. Young people do sports at the ....

Read and complete :-

(What – bring – prefer – jewellery – exhibition – Why)

1. I'd .... to eat pizza with mushrooms.

2. I saw a lot of .... in the museum.

3. In the museums, there is a great .... about Egypt.

4. We have to .... food with us for the picnic.

5. .... about drinking mango juice ?

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Types of transport in your city "

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" The El- Orman Garden"

I like visiting the gardens. El-Orman Gardens are very big and there's a lot to see there. You can see wild flowers and plants from all over the country there. There is also a small lake and a museum.

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Adham : Shall we go to the Space Exhibition ?

Ali : (1) ....

Adham : (2) .... ?

Ali : We can go tomorrow morning.

Adham : Where will we meet ?

Ali : (3) ....

Adham : OK. I will wait in front of the Science Museum.

Ali : (4) .... ?

Adham : No. I don't think Omar will come with us.

Ali : Why ?

Adham : (5) ....

Ali : He is ill ! We could visit him after visiting the exhibition.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. My journey to Port Said .... about four hours.

a) takes b) gives c) gets d) sends

2. What about going to the Space .... at the Science Museum tomorrow ?

a) Selection b) Prohibition c) Exception d) Exhibition

3. "............" gives the opposite meaning of "hide".

a) Leave b) See c) Show d) Use

4. I like travelling on this train because it is ....

a) expensive b) comfortable c) slow d) uncomfortable

5. After leaving his secondary school, my brother went to the ....

a) aquarium b) museum c) university d) station

6. (SB) The .... shows how to travel by metro.

a) exhibition b) map c) stop d) space

7. (WB) The opposite of "interesting" is "...............".

a) boring b) exciting c) pleasant d) comfortable

8. When .... ?

a) is the film starting b) the film is starting

c) the film starts d) does the film start

9. (SB) The library .... at 3:15.

a) closed b) will close c) is going to close d) closes

10. The plane .... at Luxor Airport at 23.05 pm.

a) landed b) lands c) will land d) land

---

3) Complete the text with words from the list :-

(environment – with – travel – top – electric)

The tram is one of the most famous types of transport in Alexandria. Lots of people use it to (1) .... around the city. Trams are (2) ...., so they are better for the (3) .... than other types of transport. Some of the trams in Alexandria have two floors. I like sitting at the (4) .... and watching the streets below.

---

4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- My Arabic lesson ....(starts) at half past nine next Sunday.

2- Port Said train .... (reach) in ten minutes.

3- (SB) When does this plane ....(arrives) in Cairo ?

4- (WB) My father ....(not take) the early bus because it is slow.

5) Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Hesham who has travelled to Tunisia about new Egyptian cities :-

"Your name is Mazen and your email address is mazen2004@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is heshamprince@gmail.com".

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on:

"Ismailia"

I live in Ismailia. It is between Port Said and Suez. It has many attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. Around 350,000 people live there. You can visit lots of places here in my city. You can visit Lake Timsah, which is near the city and the Natural Science Museum. You can also do a lot of sports here. I can have tennis lessons at the sports centre and I can also go swimming. I love my city much. Tell me about your city.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. You can see different kinds of fish at the ....

a) library b) aquarium c) hospital d) sports centre

2. More .... should be built for young people to practise sports and other activities.

a) banks b) museums c) sports centres d) shops

3. I prefer having picnics at the .... I like trees and other interesting plants.

a) libraries b) beaches c) botanical gardens d) shopping centres

4. Tourists like visiting .... to enjoy watching statues and old objects.

a) restaurants b) museums c) parks d) funfairs

5. Salwa always goes to the zoo .... Friday mornings.

a) at b) on c) in d) with

6. Ibrahim usually visits his sisters .... the weekend.

a) to b) in c) on d) at

7. Ahmed goes shopping .... the afternoon.

a) in b) to c) at d) on

8. Sally has English lesson .... 9 a.m on Monday.

a) on b) at c) in d) to

9. The library is .... the restaurant and the hotel.

a) next b) at c) between d) opposite

10. Turn right, the sports centre is .... the left.

a) on b) in c) at d) up

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Hamza is asking Ali about the sports centre.

Hamza : Hello ! Is the sports centre near from here ?

Ali : Hello ! (1)........................... . It's a five-minute walk.

Hamza : (2) ....?

Ali : Yes, walk along this road. It's opposite the bank.
(3).. ?

Hamza : I play tennis. What about you ?

Ali : (4) ....

Hamza : Swimming is a nice sport. When do you go there ?

Ali : (5) ....

Hamzah : Great! Next Monday, I will be at the club, so I can meet you there.

Ali : That will be great !

---

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

A woman, at the train station, is asking about the train to Ismailia.

A woman : What time does the next train to Ismailia leave ?

A booking clerk : (1) ....

A woman : (2) .... ?

A booking clerk : It takes 2 hours.

A woman : Can I book a ticket, please ?

A booking clerk : (3) .... Single or return ?

A woman : Single, please. (4) .... ?

A booking clerk : It's seventy pounds.

A woman : (5) ....

A booking clerk : Thank you. Here's your ticket.

---

2) Choose the correct answer :-

1. We had a nice meal at this .... last week.
   a) factory b) bank c) restaurant d) station
2. My father often goes to his village because it is a .... place.
   a) peaceful b) boring c) noisy d) bad

3. (WB) " ...." is a large area of water with land around it.

a) Sea b) River c) Lake d) Pond

4. Manar is interested .... watching English movies.

a) at b) in c) of d) on

5. (SB) The café is on the corner .... the botanical garden.

a) for b) of c) down d) up

6. (SB) There are lots of things to do here, ... at the weekend.

a) slowly b) quickly c) suddenly d) especially

7. (WB) You can see trees and other interesting plants at a/an ....

a) airport b) aquarium c) botanical garden d) library

8. The train leaves .... seven tomorrow.

a) in b) at c) on d) of

9. My birthday is ....17th June.

a) on b) at c) from d) in

10. (WB) The train leaves .... five minutes.

a) on b) on c) in d) for

1. (SB) We could go to a nearby .... for lunch.

a) entrance b) hall c) library d) café

2. Shady bought some pottery .... a lovely shop.

a) for b) with c) from d) of

3. The metro is one of the most .... means of transport, so I often take it.

a) harmful b) comfortable c) crowded d) expensive

4. Amr .... a suggestion to have an ice cream and I agreed.

a) did b) went c) made d) brought

5. A .... is a period of 100 years.

a) decade b) center c) centre d) century

6. .... about going to the museum ?

a) What b) When c) Where d) Why

7. Chess is a/an .... game.

a) indoor b) outside c) bored d) careful

8. Let's .... a boat on the lake.

a) takes b) taking c) take d) took

9. A : .... we go to the zoo ? B : That would be great.

a) Shall b) Should c) Are d) Were

10. (WB) Thank you .... asking me to visit the lake with you.

a) on b) in c) to d) for

---

3) Complete the text with words from the list :-

(beaches – kitchens – peaceful – weekend – Lake)

I like Ismailia. It is a (1) .... city. There are lots of things to do there, especially at the (2) .... On Friday afternoons, I often go to (3) .... Timsah with my family. It's a beautiful lake with (4) .... around it.

(restaurant – train station – library – monuments – peaceful)

1. I booked a ticket to Aswan at the ....
2. This .... serves delicious food.
3. We have great .... at the Grand Egyptian Museum.
4. I enjoy the .... life in the countryside.

(4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. (WB) I live ……………..(on) a small village in the south of Egypt.

2. (SB) Judy goes to the sports centre …………….(of) the afternoon on Saturdays.

3. I have tennis lessons …………(in) 9 am.

4. The shopping centre is …………………(opposite) to the station.

---

(5) Choose the correct word :-

1. (WB) I live (in / on) a small village in the south of Egypt.

2. (SB) Nagwa usually visits her grandparents (in / at) the weekend.

3. (WB) You can't hear any traffic here. It is very (noisy / peaceful).

(5) Choose the correct word :-

1. (WB) Why ………………(doesn't) we meet at the park ?

2. (WB) Would you like to ……………(meets) up tomorrow, Lina ?

3. (WB) I'd ………………(prefers) to go somewhere outside.

4. (SB) Shall we ………………(went) to the park, then ?

---

3) Complete the text with words from the list :-

(get – opens – comfortable – nearby – see)

I'm looking forward to our trip to the El-Orman Garden. It (1) ……………… at 9 a.m and it takes about an hour to (2) ………………. there by car. The online reviews about the garden is fantastic. The garden is very big and there's lots to (3) ……………… . Make sure that you wear (4) ……………….shoes.

---

(6) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Ismailia is an interesting city "

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

Write an email of about (110) words :-

To your friend Sara inviting her to the exhibition with you and your family. Your name is Alaa and your email address is alaa22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sara26@yahoo.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Unit (1)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Nabil is talking to his mother about his first day at school.

Mother : Hello, Nabil. How was your first day at school ?

Nabil : (1) ...., but many students were absent.

Mother : (2) ....?

Nabil : Because of COVID 19. It's very dangerous.

Mother : (3) .... ?

Nabil : Yes, I've washed my hands already.

Mother : What did your teachers advise you to do ?

Nabil : (4) ....

Mother : Do you have a mask ?

Nabil : (5) .... I have just taken it off.

---

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :-

I am Samy and I live in Ismailia, which is between Port Said and Suez. The Suez Canal runs through the city before it reaches the sea. Ismailia is a part of history. In the past, people in Ismailia saved their city sacrifice themselves for their homes.

Ismailia is beautiful. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of things to do here, especially at the weekend. I often go to Lake Timsah, which is near

the city, with my family. **It** is a beautiful lake with beaches around it. We can play on the beach. We can catch fish. There are some interesting museums in Ismailia! My favourite place is the Natural Museum because I'm interested in animals. In this museum, you can enjoy and have a lot of scientific information about animals and plants. The weather in Ismailia is fine all the year. So, you can enjoy your stay here. The hotels are clean, comfortable and not expensive. It is a good place to go to at the weekend.

1- Explain why Ismailia is a good place to spend a holiday. Mention two points.

....

....

2- How are the buildings in Ismailia attractive ? Mention two reasons.

....

....

3- Do you think your stay in Ismailia will be comfortable ? Why / Why not ?

....

....

4- The main idea of the passage is ....

a) Port Said b) The Suez Canal c) Ismailia d) Egypt

5- What does the underlined word "**It**" refer to ? ....

a) The weekend b) Lake Timsah c) City d) Ismailia

6- People in Ismailia are ....

a) friendly b) unhelpful c) cruel d) interested

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. (WB) Why don't you .... to my house ?
   a) borrow b) send c) spend d) come
2. What will you do .... the weekend ?
   a) of b) in c) at d) down
3. Alexandria is one of the most .... cities in Egypt. I enjoy visiting it.
   a) attractive b) boring c) crowded d) exited
4. (WB) A / An .... is a place where you can borrow and read books.
   a) office b) library c) sports centre d) airport
5. (WB) The place where you can see beautiful fish is a /an ....
   a) café b) botanical garden c) bank d) aquarium
6. (SB) The .... shows how to travel by metro.
   a) map b) station c) library d) restaurant
7. To cross the canal, they used a ....
   a) car b) bus c) train d) ferry
8. Please, be .... when you carry these bags !
   a) careless b) excited c) bored d) careful

9. When .... ?

a) does the museum open
b) the museum closes
c) the museum does close
d) does the museum closes

10. We don't know when the next bus .... We are waiting for it.

a) will arrive
b) arrives
c) arrived
d) is arriving

(4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. When ....(do) the film you are watching end ?

2. The librarian is waiting for me to leave. The library ....(close) after 25 minutes.

3. (SB) The film hasn't finished. It ....(finish) at nine o'clock.

4. We are late for the first train, so we can take the second train. It..............(leave) after an hour.

5) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(including – Station – on – get – parts)

Some people think that Sydney in Australia has the best transport in the world. Why? Because trains, buses and ferries travel to all (1) .... of the city. If you want to (2) .... to somewhere quickly, fast trains leave from Central. (3)................. to many places (4) .... the airport.

(6) Choose the correct word :-

1. The train **arrives / will arrive** in Luxor at 23:15

2. My father **didn't / doesn't** take the early bus, because it is very slow.

3. (WB) The children played **indoors / outdoors** today, because it was very hot outside.

7) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" What you do on one day of the week "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

1. Mini-Test on unit (1) For Al-Azhar Students

Judy and Ali are talking about the tram.

Judy : What do you use to travel around the city ?
Ali : 1) ....
Judy : 2) .... ?
Ali : No, it is cheap.
Judy : Why type of energy do trams use ?
Ali : (3) ....
Judy : Why do you prefer the tram ?
Omar : 4) ....

2) Read and match :-

1. My train	a. ( ) to meet up this evening ?
2. Would you like	b. ( ) arrives at 6 in the morning.
3. I'd love	c. ( ) to!
4. The aquarium is	d. ( ) next to the museum.
5. Shall we go	e. ( ) to the swimming pool ?
	f. ( ) more than usual.

1. The children played indoor today,	a. ( ) calm and quiet.
2. Trams are electric,	b. ( ) It is a very peaceful city.
3. "Especially" means	c. ( ) takes people across water.
4. A ferry	d. ( ) so they are better for the environment.
5. You can't hear any traffic here.	e. ( ) because it was very hot outside.

	f. ( ) more than usual.

2) Read and correct the underlined words :-

1. Salma usually visits her grandparents **in** the weekend. (.........................)

2. The first metrol train **leave** at 5.30 am. (.........................)

3. You can see beautiful fish at the **sports centre**. (.........................)

4. The sports centre is **opposite** the aquarium and the hospital. (.........................)

3) Use your brain, think smart

1. I'd prefer .... somewhere indoors.

a) going b) to go c) go d) goes

2. Adam .... to his school early every day.

a) arrives b) reaches c) gets d) interests

3. It's so peaceful out here in the country. The word "peaceful" means ....

a) noisy b) terrible c) horrible d) calm

4. I learned to swim .... the age of seven.

a) in b) at c) on d) of

5. Bread and cakes are made of ....

a) flowers b) floors c) flour d) floats

3) Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

" Your city "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

....
....

Talking about your city or village : للتحدث عن مدينتك أو قريتك

1. Where do you live ?	- I live in Ismailia.
2. Where is Ismailia ?	- It is between Port Said and Suez.
3. What does it look like ?	- It has attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens.
4. How many people live in Ismailia ?	- Around 350,000 people live there.
5. What places can you visit near your city ?	- I can visit Lake Timsah, which is near the city and the Natural Science Museum.
6. What sports can you do in your city ?	- I can have tennis lessons at the sports centre and I can also go swimming.

Discussion timetables and public transport : للحديث حول الجداول الزمنية ووسائل المواصلات العامه وايهما تفضل

***Ali : Which way do you like to travel ? Why ?** أى وسيلة مواصلات تفضل / تحب السفر بها ؟ ولماذا ؟

- Ahmed : I like the train because it's comfortable and it isn't expensive.

- Hala : I prefer the tram. It's more fun!

A) Answer the following questions :- ***Critical thinking skill.***

1- Do you think that the train is the main means of transport in Egypt ? Why / Why not ?

- Yes, I think so. Because it's not expensive and fast.

B) Read the sentences :-

1. I love travelling by train because it's interesting to look out of the window.

2. Trains are fast and comfortable.

3. Egypt has the oldest railway in Africa.

4. More than 800 million passengers travel by train in Egypt every year on 5,000 kilometres of railways.

---

1. What time does the train to Alexandria leave ?	- At 11.30.
2. Which platform does it leave from ?	- From platform 5.
3. How long does the journey take to Alexandria ?	- About 3 hours.
4. How many passengers travel by train every year in Egypt ?	- More than 80 million passengers.

5. Why type of energy do trams use ?	- They use electricity.
6. What is special about some of the trams in Alexandria?	- They have two floors.

Making Suggestions : لتقديم الإقتراحات

Suggestion طريقة قول الإقتراح	**Response الرد**
1. Would you like to meet up tomorrow ? **2. Shall we go to the park, then?**	***Agreeing الموافقة*** **- I'd love to!** **- It's/ That's a good idea.**
3. How / What about the museum ? **4. Why don't you come to my house ?**	***Disagreeing الرفض*** **- I'm not sure.** **- I'd prefer to go somewhere indoors.** **- It would be nice to play computer games.**

1) Learn important vocabulary

peaceful / Science Museum / aquarium / Space Exhibition / especially / monuments / platform / comfortable.

2) Read and write sentences using present simple for scheduled events, prepositions of time and prepositions of place :-

- The train **arrives** in Qena at 11 pm.
- How long **does** it **take** to reach Awan ?
- **On Fridays**, I visit my grandparents.
- The sports centre is **on the corner** of the road.

3) Make suggestions :- لتقديم الإقتراحات

- **Would you like to** visit Luxor ?
- **Shall** we **go** to the aquarium ?
- **It would be nice to** visit our uncle.
- **Why don't we go** to the sports centre ?

4) Speaking :-

1. What type of energy do trams use ?	- Trams use electricity.
2. Which platform does the train leave from ?	- Platform 7.

3. What about spending the weekend in Alexandria ?	- It's a great idea.

A paragraph / An email on : 1) Your city / 2) What you do at the weekend
3) Travelling by train. / 4) A trip to a museum

Test Bit by bit Unit (1)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Tamer is talking to Khalid.

Tamer : (1) .... ?

Khalid : I'm going to the train station.

Tamer : Why ?

Khaled : (2) ....

Tamer : Where is he coming from ?

Khaled : (3) ....

Tamer : (4) ....?

Khaled : The train gets there at 6 o'clock.

Tamer : Can I come with you ?

Tamer : (5) ....

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1. Your friend suggests going to the botanical gardens and you agree.

....

2. You friend asks you which way you like to travel from Cairo to Alex.

....

3. You are at a museum. Someone asks you how they can go to the park.

....

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

The boat was one of the first forms of transport. A hundred years ago, the only way to make a journey was by boat. Nowadays, it is possible to travel from a country to another by train in an hour. It is also possible to fly from one continent to another in a few hours. However, many passengers still have fun while travelling by a boat. Although the boat is a rather old-fashioned way of travelling, it has certain advantages. The boats is usually more comfortable than a plane or a car is. Instead of staying in your seat for the whole

journey on a plane or a car, you can go for a walk on the deck, eat in the restaurant or even do shopping.

However, having more space to move around makes a long journey much more pleasant. So, you can travel by boat if you have much time.

1. How many forms of transport are there in the passage ?

2. What does the underlined pronoun " it " refer to ?

3. Why do you think boats are more comfortable than planes ?

4. It's possible to travel from one continent to another in a few hours by ....

a) boat b) car c) bus d) plane

5. The opposite of "old-fashioned" is ....

a) old b) ancient c) modern d) large

6. Although people travel by planes nowadays, some people find travelling by boats.........

a) enjoyable b) helpless c) terrible d) horrible

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Fruit and vegetables are cheaper in the .... than in the supermarket.

a) market b) café c) bus d) plane

2. A lot of people buy that mobile because it is easy ....

a) use b) to use c) using d) for use

3. The tourists enjoyed seeing 6,000-year-old .... from ancient Egypt.

a) screens b) music c) mobiles d) jewellery

4. We visited Italy in July .... 2020.

a) on b) in c) at d) with

5. When does the concert .... ?

a) beginning b) begin c) began d) begins

6. He'll be in Egypt soon. His plane .... at 6:45.

a) arrived b) arrives c) arriving d) is arrived

7. We had a .... night after the children went to bed.

a) noisy b) messy c) terrible d) peaceful

8. Trams are .... , so they are better for the environment than other types.

a) ancient b) noisy c) messy d) electric

9. Are you going to the museum .... Saturday ?

a) at b) on c) in d) for

10. The restaurant .... at 06:40 tonight.

a) open b) opening c) opens d) is opens

5) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1. The bank is close to the café. (near)

....

2. Be patient! The match is at eight o'clock. (starts)

....

3. What about going to the park ? (Why don't)

....

6) Read and correct the underlined word(s) :-

1. There were about 200 **passages** on the train. (...........................)
2. Reading is a **useless** hobby. (...........................)
3. From the market, turn right and go **street** on. (...........................)
4. The computer shop is **over** the corner. (...........................)

7) (SB) Write an email of about (110) words :-

To your friend Alaa inviting him to an exhibition with you and your family.

- Your name is Maher and your email address is maher19@yahoo.com
- Your friend's email address is alaa99@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

....
....

Unit (2) Let's go shopping

Lessons (1&2)

coffee machine (n)	ماكينة صنع القهوة	discount (n)	خصم – تخفيض
kettle (n)	غلاية (كهربائية)	deal (n)	اتفاق – صفقة
microwave (n)	مايكروويف (فرن)	speaker (n)	سماعة (مُكبر صوت)
toaster (n)	محمصة خبز كهربائية	smart (adj)	ذكى
advert (n)	إعلان	shop (ped) (v), (n)	يتسوق – متجر
special offer (n)	عرض خاص	sale (n)	تخفيض - أوكازيون
magazine (n)	مجلة	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل البضائع
poster (n)	ملصق إعلانات	free (adj)	مجانى
website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت	item (n)	عنصر
oven (n)	فرن	useful (adj)	مفيد
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى	price (n)	ثمن – سعر
quality (n)	جودة	fridge (n)	ثلاجة
normally (adv)	عادة – بشكل عادى	advertise (d) (v)	يعلن
city centre shop (n)	متجر وسط المدينة	fresh (adj)	طازج – مُنعش
leather industry (n)	صناعة الجلود	compare (d) (v)	يُقارن
customer (n)	زبون – عميل	shopping centre (n)	مركز تجارى
shop assistant (n)	عامل فى محل تجارى	survey (n)	إستبيان / دراسة بحثية
market (n)	سوق تجارية	column (n)	عامود – خانة
headphones (n)	سماعة الرأس	table (n)	جدول
necklace (n)	عُقد – قلادة	the Mediterranean Sea(n)	البحر الأبيض المتوسط

Lessons (3&4)

log (ged) in (v)	يسجل دخول	turn (ed) off (v)	يُطفئ – يوقف
fill (ed) in (v)	يملأ إستمارة – يُعطى معلومات	charge (d) (v)	يشحن (بالكهرباء)
plug (ged) in (v)	يتصل بالكهرباء	password (n)	كلمة السر
turn (ed) on (v)	يُشغل	handicraft (n)	حرفة يدوية – عمل يدوى
traditional (adj)	تقليدى	artists (n)	فنانين
assistant (n)	مساعد – بائع فى محل	passport (n)	جواز سفر

email (ed) (v)	يرسل بالبريد الإلكترونى	guess (ed) (v)	يُخمن
again (adv)	مرة أخرى – ثانية	corner (n)	ركن – زاوية
drop (ped) (v)	يُسقط – يرمى	battery) (n)	بطارية
form (n)	إستمارة – نموذج	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
town centre (n)	وسط المدينة – مركز المدينة	rule (n)	قاعدة – يحكم
statue (n)	تمثال	south (n)	جنوب
wooden (adj)	خشبى	style (n)	إسلوب – طريقة – طراز
carpet (n)	سجادة	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
quality (n)	جودة	decorated (adj)	مُزين – مُزخرف
village (n)	قرية	designs (n)	رسومات – نقوشات
shells (n)	صدف – قواقع	soft (adj)	ناعم / لين
coast (n)	ساحل	colourful (adj)	ملون
Arabic (n), (adj)	اللغة العربية، عربي(الجنسية)	instructions (n)	تعليمات

Lessons (5&6)

order (ed) (v) ,(n)	يطلب – طلب تجارى	horrible (adj)	مُريع – شنيع
complaint (n)	شكوى	review (n)	مقال نقدى – مراجعة
machine (n)	آلة – ماكينة	jewellery box (n)	صندوق مجوهرات (حُلى)
email (ed) (v), (n)	يُرسل بالبريد – رسالة إلكترونية	call (ed) back (v)	يعاود الإتصال
delivery company (n)	شركة التوصيل	online shopping (n)	التسوق عبر الإنترنت
role-play (ed) (v)	تبادل الأدوار – يتبادل الأدوار	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح
customer (n)	زبون – عميل	size (n)	حجم – مقاس
product (n)	مُنتج	trusted (adj)	موثوق به
shop (ped) (v), (n)	يتسوق – محل	sources (n)	مصادر
seller (n)	بائع	user (n)	مستخدم
agree (v)	يوافق	title (n)	عنوان (مقال – كتاب..)
quick (adj)	سريع	mix (ed) up (v)	يخلط
cross (n), (adj)	غاضب - علامة ×	describe (v)	يصف
carpet (n)	سجادة	points (n)	نقاط
Alexandria Electrics	شركة الإسكندرية للصناعات الكهربائية	pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
		text (n)	نص

Conjugation of Irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع	**Past الماضى**	**P.P. التصريف الثالث**

buy	يشترى	bought	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
give	يعطى	gave	given
tell	يخبر	told	told
come	يأتى	came	come
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
send	يُرسل	sent	sent
lose	يفقد – يخسر	lost	lost
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
meet	يقابل	met	met
break	يكسر	broke	broken
keep	يحفظ – يظل	kept	kept
say	يقول	said	said

Study these definitions

coffee machine	you can make a hot drink with this
kettle	you can boil water with this
toaster	you can make bread warm with this
microwave	you can cook things quickly with this
complaint	something you make when you are unhappy about something.
order	when a customer asks someone to send, bring or make something for them.
call back	return a phone call.
email	to send a message electronically

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

have	a discount	به تخفيض	spend	money	ينفق نقود
	much homework	لديه واجب كثير	get	the bus	يستقل الإتوبيس
	money	لديه نقود		the train	يستقل القطار
offer	a deal	يعرض صفقة / إتفاق		a drink	يحصل على مشروب
play	music	يُشغل الموسيقى		a poster	يحصل على ملصق
	a sport	يمارس رياضة	do	homework	يؤدى الواجب المنزلى
earn	money	يجنى أموال	have	a problem	لديه مشكلة
lose	homework	يفقد الواجب	get	information	يحصل على معلومات
follow	a rule	يتبع قاعدة	make	a complaint	يُقدم شكوى
get	angry – cross	يغضب	answer	a complaint	يرد على شكوى
keep	calm	يظل أو يحافظ على هدوءه			

Important Expressions & Prepositions

start with يبدأ بـ	on special offer فى عرض خاص
deal of the day صفقة اليوم	things are the usual price أشياء بالسعر المعتاد
at the best prices بأفضل الأسعار	wait for deals or discounts ينتظر العروض أو التخفيضات
things for the house أدوات منزلية	the difference between .. and .. الإختلاف بين ..و..
ask .... about يسأل عن	adverts from إعلانات من..
ask for information يطلب معلومات	What type of ... ? ما نوع ... ؟
give ... information يقدم معلومات	choose to + inf. يختار أن
deal / discount on صفقة / تخفيض على	look for يبحث عن
spend much money on . يُنفق أموال كثيرة على ..	tell ... about يُخبر عن
on the Mediterranean Sea على البحر المتوسط	shop online يتسوق عبر الإنترنت
talk to يتحدث إلى (شخص)	watch films from the internet يشاهد أفلام من الإنترنت
talk about يتحدث عن (موضوع / شئ)	walk along ... يمشى بإمتداد أو بطول ..
get a new password يحصل على كلمة سر جديدة	run around a corner يجرى حول الناصية(الزاوية)
send a form يُرسل نموذج أو إستمارة	take ... to prison يسجن (شخص)
a really cool new phone هاتف جديد رائع حقاً	(be) made by مصنوع بواسطة ..
walk down the road يمشى على الطريق	come in many colours يأتى بعدة ألوان
feel very bad يشعر بالسوء الشديد	in traditional designs به رسومات تقليدية
make beautiful handicrafts يقوم بأعمال يدوية جميلة	in different colours and sizes بألوان وأحجام مختلفة
(be) interested in (n. / inf. + ing) مهتم بـ	sell in many shops يبيع فى محلات مختلفة
order an item يطلب سلعة	(be) famous for مشهور بـ
I'm still waiting لازلت منتظراً	popular with محبوب لدى / مشهور لدى
call back يُعيد الإتصال	work for يعمل لصالح / لدى ...
try not to get angry يحاول ألا يغضب	sorry about أسف بشأن
explain the problem يشرح المشكلة	think about يفكر فى
wait for ينتظر لـ	unhappy about غير سعيد بشأن
ask for يطلب	Oh, dear ! ياه/ ياسلام (تستخدم للتعبير عن الإنزعاج أو الدهشة)
as a present for كهدية لـ	It doesn't work. إنها لا تعمل.
	agree with يتفق مع

Vocabulary Study :- Synonyms and Antonyms المترادفات والمتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف لها (نفس المعنى)	Antonym / opposite المضاد للكلمة
sell يبيع	exchange – trade	buy يشترى
cheap رخيص الثمن	inexpensive	expensive – costy غالى الثمن
free مجانى	unpaid – without money	paid مدفوع
ask يسأل – يطلب	inquire	give – reply يعطى – يرد
special خاص – مميز	important – particular	usual – common عادى – مألوف

start يبدأ	begin	finish ينهى – ينتهى
turn on يُشغل	switch on	turn off – shut down يُطفئ
remember يتذكر	recongnise – recall	forget ينسى
true صحيح	right – correct	false – wrong خطأ
log in يُسجل دخول (لنظام إلكترونى)	start using the system / sign in	log out – sign out يُسجل خروج (من نظام إلكترونى)
colourful ملون	bright	plain سادة
happy سعيد	glad – delighted – pleased	unhappy – sad حزين
seller بائع	assistant	customer زبون – عميل
positive إيجابى	good – helpful – practical	negative سلبى
beautiful جميل	nice – pretty	horrible مُريع / شنيع

General notes on Reading & Listening

1) sale / on sale / for sale

*** sale (n)** (يبيع البضائع بأسعار منخفضة) أوكازيون

ex : - **There's** a big **sale on** at Karfour Home Store.

*** on sale** معروضة للبيع بسعر منخفض (بضاعة)

ex : - Smart TVs are **on sale** at this shop. You can buy them for lower prices.

*** for sale** (معروض للبيع) للبيع

ex : - This house is **for sale**. His owner wants to sell it.

---

2) deal (v) , (n)

*** deal (dealt – dealt) (v)** يتعامل

ex : - The book **deals with** education.

*** deal (n)** (شراء شئ ما بسعر منخفض جداً) صفقة

ex : - She **got a good deal on** her new house.

---

3) (be) one of the + صفة تفضيل + إسم جمع ....

ex : - Aya is **one of the** tallest girls in school.

---

4) fill in – fill with

*** fill in** (إستمارة – بيانات) يملئ

ex : - **Fill in** this form, please. We want to know information about you.

*** fill ... with ...** يملأ بـ ...

ex : - Toka **filled** the bottle **with** cold water.

---

5) Win / gain / earn

*** win (won – won)** (... جائزة – مباراة – مسابقة) يفوز بـ

ex : Hoda **won a gold medal** in Judo.

*** gain (ed)** (... معلومات – وزن – خبرة) يكسب / يكتسب

ex : - He is wise. He **gained much experience** in life.

*** earn** (.. مال – معيشة) يكسب

ex : - Mr. Gamal has **earned a lot of money** in Saudi Arabia.

---

6) (be) used to / (be) used for

*** (be) used to + (inf.)** يستخدم لكى

ex : - A microwave **is used to heat** cold food.

*** (be) used for + (inf. + ing)** يستخدم فى

ex : - A microwave **is used for heating** cold food.

---

7) order

*** order (ed) (v)** يأمر – يطلب

ex : - She **ordered** him **to clean** his room.

ex : - **I ordered a coffee** machine but **I** got the wrong item.

*** order (n)** أمر (تعليمات صادرة من مستوى أعلى) – طلب

ex : - The officer gave **orders** to the soldiers to move on.

- I called the delivery company because **the order** was late.

*** in order** فى الترتيب – بالترتيب

ex : - The teacher asked his students to put the words **in order**.

---

8) complain – complaint

*** complain (ed) (v) (about – against)** يشكو

ex : - (SB) Hani **complained about** not having enough pocket money.

*** complaint (n)** شكوى

ex : - Hani **made a complaint** about not having enough pocket money.

---

9) get = become (عندما يتبع الفعل **get** صفة) يًصبح

ex : - Roaa **got angry** when her father didn't buy her a new mobile.

Vocabulary Exercises Lessons (1&2)

1. It's easy to make coffee with the ....
   a) kettle   b) microwave   c) toaster   d) coffee machine
2. There's a special .... to have free one when you buy two pieces.
   a) shop   b) offer   c) test   d) over
3. The new chemist's gives 20% .... on shampoo and sun cream.
   a) discount   b) deal   c) information   d) count
4. I want to buy a/an .... to play music on my birthday.
   a) oven   b) microwave   c) speaker   d) website
5. This .... is from a website about the new capital.
   a) wave   b) shop   c) kettle   d) advert
6. (WB) You can make bread warm with the ....
   a) kettle   b) microwave   c) toaster   d) speaker
7. (WB) Osama's family have a/an .... TV. They can now watch films from the internet.
   a) old   b) smart   c) free   d) fast
8. (WB) You can cook things quickly with the ....
   a) microwave   b) kettle   c) toaster   d) fridge
9. (SB) You are a .... Ask the customer what they want to buy.
   a) speaker   b) patient   c) shop assistant   d) programmer
10. They offer free .... on their trucks, inside Cairo.
   a) delivery   b) survey   c) shopping   d) park
11. Alexandria is called "the bride of the .... Sea".
   a) Red   b) Mediterranean   c) Black   d) Caribbean
12. We have a /an .... offer. Don't miss it.
   a) normal   b) usual   c) regular   d) special
13. Mum always prefers to buy things .... the house.
   a) for   b) of   c) on   d) about
14. Can you .... me information about this machine ?
   a) make   b) give   c) do   d) have
15. She always buys many things .... special offers.
   a) of   b) for   c) at   d) on
16. What's the .... of the day in Carefour ?
   a) email   b) deal   c) type   d) magazine

---

1. The opposite of the verb **"buy"** is " .... ".
   a) solve   b) sail   c) sell   d) soil
2. The word "free" can be the opposite of ....
   a) voluntary   b) paid   c) changeable   d) changeable
3. To give the opposite of the word **"expensive"**, we add the prefix ....
   a) un-   b) in-   c) ir-   d) il-
4. "Microbus" is a/an .... bus.
   a) big   b) expensive   c) fast   d) small
5. The word **"inquire"** gives the same meaning of ....
   a) reply   b) ask   c) task   d) give

(A) Structure Exercises

1. Kettles are .... expensive than tablets.
   a) less b) little c) the less d) the least
2. Which book is the .... useful ? - The science book.
   a) more b) most c) les d) much
3. Adel is taller .... Sameh.
   a) nor b) or c) as d) than
4. (SB) The .... useful thing in my kitchen is the fridge.
   a) more b) most c) as d) less
5. (SB) It is .... to buy clothes in shops than online.
   a) best b) good c) better d) the best
6. (WB) The second coffee machine is .... than the first one.
   a) smaller b) smallest c) small d) the smallest
7. (WB) Which item do you think is the .... expensive ?
   a) little b) less c) least d) more
8. Which place is the .... in Cairo to visit ?
   a) nice b) nicest c) nicer d) most nice
9. The giraffe is taller .... the camel.
   a) then b) than c) this d) that
10. No one is .... than Ahmed in the class.
    a) strong b) strongest c) as strong d) stronger
11. Shopping online is .... before.
    a) easy b) as easy c) easiest d) easier than

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:-

1- (SB) The supermarket is the ....(busy) shop in my town.
2- (WB) Red is ....(most) popular colour for our toasters this year.
3- (WB) My new phone is much ....(easy) to use than my old one.
4- (WB) The film was terrible. I think it was the ....(worse) film I've ever seen!
5- Ayman's car is (most) ....expensive than his uncle's.
6- Youssef is the (stronger) .... boy in the class.
7- Basketball is (least) ....(exciting) than football.
8- Mohamed Salah is the (better) ....player in England this year.

(B) Structure Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Salma said she would phone me, but she .... emailed nor phoned.
   a) both b) other c) neither d) each
2. Ali and Toka could get into the flat because .... of them had a door key.
   a) neither b) both c) either d) none
3. I can either play tennis .... watch TV.
   a) or b) nor c) every d) each
4. (SB) .... the smart TV nor the large TV suited يناسب the customer.
   a) Both b) Either c) Neither d) Other
5. (SB) You can choose .... soup or salad with your meal.
   a) neither b) either c) both d) all
6. (WB) My sister and I .... like playing tennis.
   a) neither b) either c) every d) both
7. The new workers are lazy. .... of them work hard.
   a) None b) Both c) Either d) Neither

8. ....Marwa and Ghada like ice cream.

a) Neither b) Either c) Both d) Nor

9. You can either go to school by bus .... on foot.

a) nor b) and c) or d) but

(2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- (SB) .... (Neither) of those necklaces are nice. I can't decide which one to buy !

2- (WB) This shop is .... (either) interesting nor cheap. Let's go to a different one.

3- (SB) .... (No) of my friends go shopping every day.

4- I want to buy both a shirt .... (or) trousers.

5- Do .... (neither) of you play football every day ?

6- None of .... (we) go on foot.

(3) Read and complete :-

(both – speakers – kettle – nor – deal)

1- You can get a free drink. There's a good ....

2- I bought some .... for my phone to play music loudly.

3- Marwa and I .... like eating fish.

4- You can boil water using the ....

General Exercises Lessons (1&2)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Aya is talking with Sama who bought a new mobile.

Aya : Hello, Sama. How are you ?

Sama : (1) .... I bought a new mobile phone.

Aya : Congratulations! (2) .... ?

Sama : I bought it yesterday.

Aya : (3) .... ?

Sama : I bought it for 3000 LE.

Aya : Where did you buy it ?

Sama : (4) ....

Aya : My birthday is next week. I will buy a new mobile phone, too.
Will you come with me ?

Sama : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. My father likes drinking coffee while he is reading a/an ....

a) interview b) magazine c) idea d) machine

2. Do you often buy things .... special offer ?

a) on b) in c) down d) up

3. When you want to buy something, you should be careful about the price and the ....

a) ability b) possibility c) equality d) quality

4. (WB) I have bought some .... for my phones, so I can play my music more loudly.

a) adverts b) speakers c) necklaces d) columns

5. Start your morning .... a fresh cup of coffee, made at home.

a) from b) with c) to d) on

6. A / An .... is used to make hot drinks.

a) coffee machine b) fridge c) instrument d) office

7. To boil water, you need a ....

a) fan b) fridge c) kettle d) screen

8. Rana is .... than Heba.

a) fastest b) fast as c) as fast d) faster

9. .... Lama nor Soha can come shopping today. Both of them are busy.

a) Neither b) Either c) All d) Each

10. You can get either free speaker .... a free film.

a) each b) also c) nor d) or

---

3) Complete the text with words from the list :-

(discount – cheaper – are – internet – smart)

There is a big sale in the shopping mall in our area. All the clothes are (1)............... than usual this week! This microwave has a 25% (2) .... It usually costs 1.000 LE, but now it is 750 LE. Osama's family want to buy a (3) .... TV, so that they can watch films on the (4) ....

---

(4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. ....(Either) Sama or Toka speaks German.
2. ....(Neither) Tarek and Abdallah are absent.
3. The three T-shirts are good, but I need the ....(big) one.
4. This red bag is ....(many) expensive than the blue one.

Lessons (3&4)

1. Some websites ask you to .... in using your email.

a) log b) plug c) turn d) make

2. The batter is empty. I need to .... it.

a) choose b) charge c) run into d) make

3. Don't forget to .... your computer when you aren't using it.

a) turn on b) turn out c) turn into d) turn off

4. Aswan is famous for Egyptian .... from leaves.

a) bowls c) handicrafts c) statues d) batteries

5. (SB) I just emailed you a form to .... in to get a new password.

a) fill b) log c) check d) sell

6. (SB) I lost some homework when my computer .... !

a) put b) broke c) charged d) ran

7. (WB) The TV is not working. Is it .... in ?

a) plugged b) passed c) logged d) charged

8. (WB) You can't use this computer without the .... I think it's 123 hello !

a) address b) name c) password d) passport

9. These beautiful handicrafts help them .... money.

a) do b) earn c) lose d) have

10. Can you .... the meaning of the word ?

a) guess b) park c) address d) put

11. The expensive belts are made of ....

a) cotton b) leather c) stone d) metal

12. This vase is .... with shells.

a) had b) done c) found d) decorated

13. This icon is used for .... the website.

a) enter b) entered c) enters d) entering

14. Giza is famous .... the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

a) of b) for c) at d) with

15. Sally is interested .... traditional art.

a) in b) of c) for d) about

16. These shirts are sold .... different sizes and colours.

a) about b) off c) in d) with

17. It's fantastic to walk .... the Nile.

a) along b) round c) around d) ahead

---

18. The opposite of the word "wrong" is "............".

a) turned b) low c) high d) right

19. "Plain" is the opposite of ....

a) modern b) ugly c) colourful d) beautiful

20. The word "wood" can be an adjective by adding ....

a) –ure b) –ion c) –en d) –in

21. The word "traditional" is formed from the word ".................".

a) trade b) true c) tradition d) try

22. The word "rob" can be turned into a noun by adding ....

a) –er b) –ir c) –ist d) –est

---

1. While Hany .... his car, he crashed into a tree.

a) drove b) drives c) was driving d) is driving

2. This morning, I .... to the town centre with my dad.

a) go b) went c) goes d) was going

3. I .... the glass while I was leaving the kitchen.

a) drops b) dropping c) drop d) dropped

4. (SB) We .... the bus to the shopping centre and I bought a really cool new phone!

a) take b) took c) takes d) taking

5. (SB) As I .... my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.

a) gave b) giving c) was giving d) give

6. (SB) The phone .... ! My friend felt very sad.

a) breaks b) broken c) broke d) was breaking

7. As Omar was running, his father .... him.

a) stop b) stopping c) stops d) stopped

8. Yesterday, I .... some of my friends at school.

a) met b) meet c) was meeting d) will meet

9. I listened to music while we .... to the sports centre.

a) walked b) were walking c) will walk d) walk

10. There .... an exciting match on TV yesterday.

a) were b) was c) does d) did

11. I .... very sad when my friend Ali was taken to hospital.

a) am b) is c) was d) were

12. .... I was reading a story, the light went off.

a) While b) But c) Before d) After

13. While .... down the street, I met him.

a) walk b) walked c) walking d) was walking

(4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. (SB) My friend felt very bad and I .... (be) sad as well.

2. (SB) I .... (show) my friends my new phone while we were walking down the road.

3. (SB) This morning, I .... (go) to the town centre with my mum.

4. (SB) .... (Be) the computer plugged in ? - Yes, it was.

5. Fady .... (be) making tea when Ayman called him.

6. What ....(be) you doing when Hassan came home ?

7. While I was charging my phone, my father ....(come) into my room.

8. Israa ....(lose) her keys while she was running.

9. Sfaaa ....(feeling) sad when Hala was ill.

10. Salma slept while she ....(listened) to music.

3) Complete the text with words from the list :-

(leather – password – was – Plug – Log)

1. .... in the computer to charge the battery.

2. People make handicrafts from wood and ....

3. Hassan can't remember his ....

4. As I .... having lunch, the telephone rang.

4) Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Manar to tell her about

" Your favourite Egyptian handicrafts "

- Your name is Safaa and your email address is Safaaali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is manarnour@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....

....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Lessons (3&4)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Wala is phoning a sales assistant to buy a tablet online.

Walaa : Hello! Can I ask about the tablets you are advertising تعلنون عنها ?

Sales assistant : Yes, of course. (1) ....?

Walaa : I want to know some information about them.(2)...............................?

Sales assistant : The prices range تتراوح from 5,000 to 25,000 pounds.

Walaa : How can I see them ?

Sales assistant : (3) ....

Walaa : OK. I have received your post. How much is the second tablet ?

Sales assistant : (4) ....

Walaa : That's good ! I'll buy it. How can I get it ?

Sales assistant : (5) .... Give me your name and address, please.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. (WB) Now my phone is not working ! I need to .... the battery.

   a) charge b) turn c) do d) make

2. My uncle built a new factory to .... carpets.

   a) make b) give c) do d) buy

3. Many computers ask you to .... in before you can use them.

   a) put b) log c) enter d) turn

4. Can you carry that .... box ? - It's very heavy.

   a) woolen b) wool c) wooden d) wood

5. (WB) When you want to use a machine, first you need to turn it ....

   a) off b) in c) out d) on

6. We bought a carpet made of ....

a) wool b) wood c) gold d) leather

7. This bag is made of ....

a) wood b) stone c) glass d) leather

8. While .... to my favourite singer, my mom was cooking me a delicious pie.

a) listen b) listens c) to listen d) listening

9. What .... at seven o'clock last night ?

a) has Sama done b) is Sama doing c) does Sama do d) was Sama doing

10. While I .... lunch, the bell rang.

a) eating b) eats c) ate d) was eating

---

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- When I went home last night, it .... (rain) heavily.

2- What were you .... (do) ?

3- As the robber .... (run) with the lady's bag, some police officers stopped him.

4- (WB) Last Tuesday, I ....(go) shopping with my friend.

---

(4) Complete the text with words from the list :-

(leaves – village – on – carpets – handicrafts)

The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful (1) .... People who live here sell (2) ...., baskets and colourful pots. Some women in a (3) .... near Aswan also make beautiful handicrafts from the (4) .... of trees. When I was in Aswan, I bought a lot of pots for all members of my family.

---

(5) Choose the correct word :-

1. (WB) You can't use this computer without the **password / passport**.

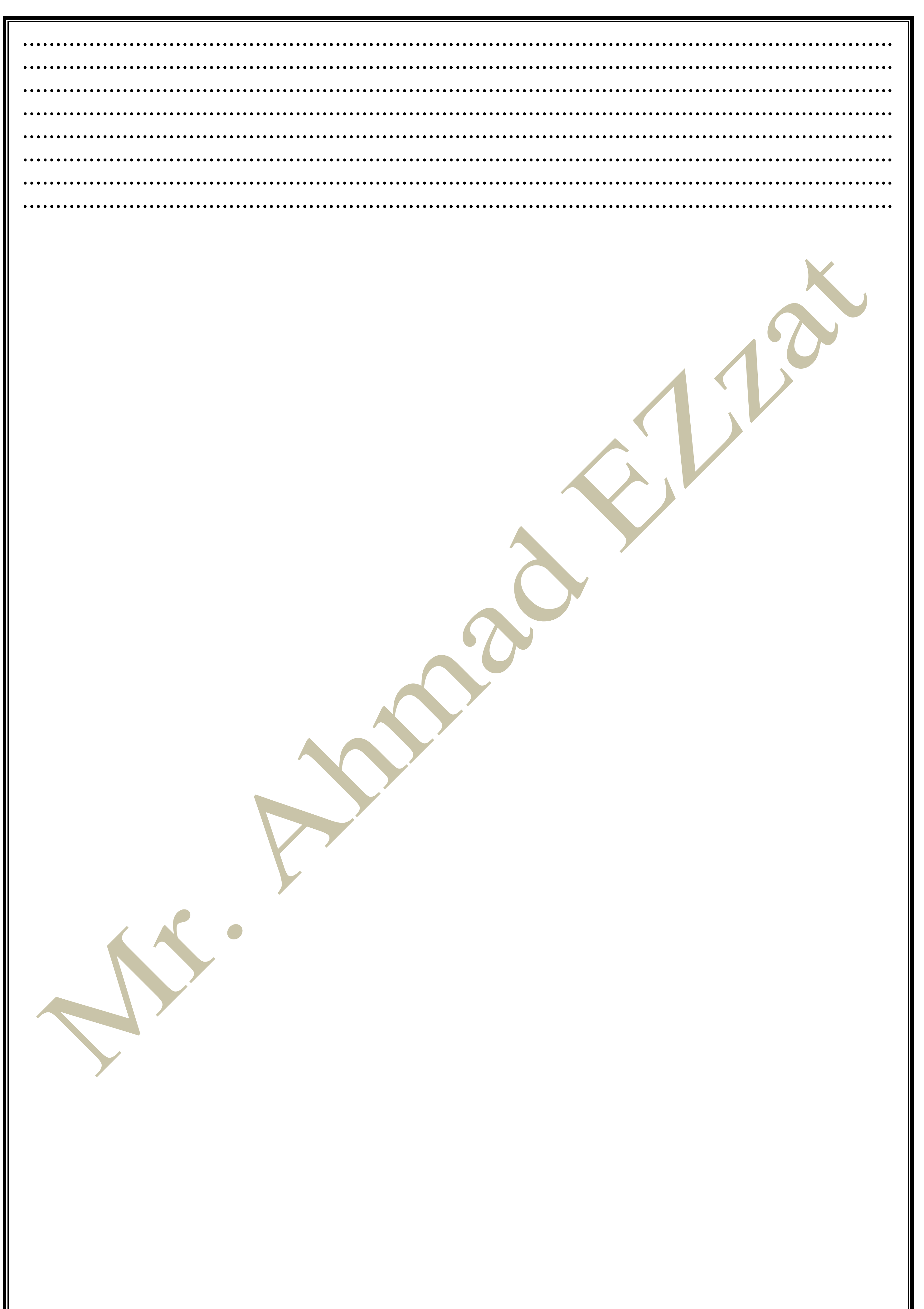
2. (SB) As **I give / was giving** my friend the phone to look at, he dropped it.

---

(6) Write an email of about (110) words to your friend John who lives in Spain about tourist attractions in Egypt.

- Your name is Seif and your email address is seifsalah@gmail.com.
- Your friend's email address is john17@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....



Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The customer made a/an .... after receiving a wrong item.
   a) text   b) complaint   c) interview   d) topic
2. You can .... food online on some apps.
   a) cook   b) order   c) keep   d) bake
3. The mixer خلاط is a .... for mixing foods.
   a) kitchen   b) pocket   c) toy   d) machine
4. City life has pros and ....
   a) coins   b) cons   c) oils   d) onions
5. My grandma keeps her gold in a beautiful .... box.
   a) jewellery   b) match   c) recycle   d) tools
6. (SB) Online shopping can be done anytime, but you need to be careful where you .... from !
   a) shop   b) ask   c) complain   d) answer
7. (WB) To .... back is to return a phone call.
   a) call   b) cool   c) carry   d) complain
8. (WB) To .... is to send a message electronically.
   a) address   b) write   c) email   d) order
9. (WB) The toaster was .... I sent it back and will buy a different one.
   a) fine   b) quick   c) horrible   d) amazing
10. Try to .... your bag to help you look for it.
    a) describe   b) include   c) find   d) make
11. You should buy items from .... sources.
    a) horrible   b) terrible   c) trusted   d) wrong
12. Read the text and give it a suitable ....
    a) item   b) role   c) title   d) order
13. Try not to .... angry when you hear the news.
    a) get   b) make   c) find   d) do
14. These sentences are .... up and the teacher wants us to put them in order.
    a) delivered   b) mixed   c) turned   d) given
15. She is unhappy .... the order as it arrived very late.
    a) on   b) about   c) back   d) in
16. What are you thinking ...., Leen ?
    a) about   b) for   c) with   d) from

1. "Negative" is the opposite of ....

a) positive　　b) boring　　c) complex　　d) pleased

2. I bought this toaster and it was "beautiful". "Beautiful" can be replaced by the word very........... .

a) glad　　b) easy　　c) horrible　　d) nice

3. The words "seller" and "customer" are ....

a) the same　　b) synonyms　　c) equals　　d) opposites

4. You can make a noun from the verb "sell" by adding ....

a) –al　　b) –er　　c) –y　　d) –tion

5. The word "complaint" is a/an ....

a) verb　　b) adjective　　c) noun　　d) adverb

6. You can make an adjective from the noun "noise" by adding ....

a) –ly　　b) –y　　c) –er　　d) –ful

General Exercises on Lessons (5&6)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Tarek is making a complaint about a kettle that he has bought.

Tarek : Hello, can I speak to the manager, please ?

Assistant : Yes, of course. (1) ....?

Tarek : I have bought a kettle and I want to make a complaint.

Assistant : (2) .... ?

Tarek : It doesn't work well.

Assistant : Did you read the instructions well ?

Tarek : (3) ....

Assistant : Why ?

Tarek : (4) ....

Assistant : Sorry, give me your details and I will send you one.

Tarek : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. .... shopping has positive and negative sides.

a) Offline　　b) Online　　c) Logging　　d) Logged

2. I want to .... a complaint about that device. جهاز

a) make　　b) do　　c) get　　d) order

3. Reshwan is really good at .... new lessons.

a) explaining　　b) killing　　c) complaining　　d) shopping

4. Don't be late. I'll wait .... you.
a) of b) on c) for d) in

5. You should try to be more .... about your study.
a) negative b) positive c) positively d) nervous

6. (WB) A/An .... is something you make when you are unhappy about something.
a) website b) audience c) evidence d) complaint

7. (WB) When a customer asks someone to send or make something for them means to......
a) deliver b) complain c) order d) offer

8. I don't want to buy the dress or the T-shirt. .... of them are the right colour !
a) Either b) Neither c) Both d) And

9. (WB) This shop is neither interesting .... cheap. Let's go to a different one.
a) or b) and c) but d) nor

10. (WB) .... Alexandria and Port Said are on the Mediterranean Sea.
a) Either b) Neither c) Too d) Both

3- (SB) Complete the text with these words :-

(say – be – calm – angry – do)

If you need to make a complaint, try not to get angry! Keep (1)................., explain the problem and (2) .... what you want the other person to (3)................ . Then they will usually (4) .... happy to help you.

---

4) (SB) Write a review of about (110) words on :-

" Something you and your family bought online "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Unit (2)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Janet wants to make a complaint about the coffee machine she has bought.

Janet : I went t the mall yesterday and bought a coffee machine.

Leila : (1) ....?

Janet : Yes, it didn't work.

Leila : Did you plug it in ?

Janet : (2) ....

Leila : (3) ....?

Janet : It was on sale.

Leila : Did you buy it from a trusted shop ?

Janet : (4) .... Why ?

Leila : As some people generally sell things for less price and less quality.

Janet : So what must I do ?

Leila : (5) ....

---

2) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

Buying and selling is part of everyday activities. People used to do this long ago. But shopping habits changed a lot. In the past you could deal directly with a person. You could talk to the seller and even ask for advice about the best quality and price. When there was a problem, you could go to the shop and explain it. At that time you could solve any problem at once.

Buying and selling today depend on a lot of online activities. First, you must log on the internet and choose price, the quality and time of delivery. You must provide correct and clear information to get your product. When there is a problem, you must fill in a form describing it clearly. An online assistant will contact you. But it may take a long time to get a reply. The biggest problem is that some companies can't be reached easily because they may be far away from you or you don't know the exact address. To buy online, you must be careful about your personal information. You must keep it secret and deal with trusted online companies.

1. Explain why there may be a problem when you buy something online? Give two reasons.
....
....

2. Are there any new shopping habits today ? Name two habits.
....
....

3. How can you protect your personal information when you buy something online ?

4. The best title for the passage is ....

a) shopping b) buying c) selling d) internet

5. Some companies can't be reached easily because .... from you.

a) they are protected
b) their products are expensive
c) they are far away
d) they are usually closed

6. The underlined "it" refers to the ....

a) problem b) product c) correct price d) good quality

---

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Neither Mark .... his brother is very tall.

a) and b) both c) nor d) or

2. I bought an electric .... to make tea easily.

a) toaster b) coffee machine c) kettle d) tool

3. I made a/an .... to buy a new laptop online.

a) order b) complaint c) present d) design

4. (WB) This microwave has a 25% ....

a) discount b) speaker c) deal d) website

5. You must .... the machine in before it works.

a) turn b) work c) prepare d) plug

6. You can cook fast if you use a .... It takes a few minutes.

a) kettle b) toaster c) fridge d) microwave

7. He bought a new .... phone which helps him a lot in his work.

a) fresh b) usual c) smart d) fast

8. (WB) To .... is to send a message electronically.

a) order b) email c) complain d) call

9. (SB) .... Alexandria Electronics nor Sound and Vision sell clothes.

a) Either b) Neither c) Too d) Both

10. When the phone rang, I .... a film.

a) watch b) watching c) was watching d) watched

4- Complete the text with these words :-

(charge – travel – nice – invited – sleep)

Last Friday, I went to Alexandria. I (1) .... my friends. Neither of them liked to go with me. We have (2) .... things to do during the day. But, I had to choose either to (3) ....by car or go by train. In the afternoon, my phone went off because I forgot to (4) .... it before I went out.

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. I moved to a new house which is ....(wide) than mine.

2. My brother got ....(good) marks than I did.

3. As I ....(sleep), the robber stole my wallet.

4. They ....(either) run nor play. They just stay at home.

(6) Choose the correct word :-

1. (WB) My sister and I **either / both** like playing tennis.

2. I need to **charge / log** the batter of my phone.

4) (WB) Write a review of about (110) words on :-

" The best and worst items of technology in your house "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

1. Mini-Test on unit 2 for Al-Azhar students

1. You can cook things quickly	a. ( ) I need to charge the battery.
2. My phone is not working now!	b. ( ) to send a message electronically.
3. The south of Egypt is famous	c. ( ) with a microwave.
4. To "email" means	d. ( ) shop online.
5. Neither Sami nor Ali	e. ( ) for its beautiful handicrafts
	f. ( ) with a kettle.

2) Read and correct the underlined words :-

1. You can choose **neither** rice or salad with your meal. (........................)
2. These beautiful **wood** boxes can be used for jewellery. (........................)
3. Yesterday, I **go** to the market. (........................)
4. **Either** the speakers and the microwave are on sale. (........................)
5. Hello ! I want to make a **complain**. (........................)

2) Use your brain, think smart :-

1. This car is .... sale. Her owner wants to sell it.

a) on b) at c) of d) for

2. Soha fell asleep .... the film.

a) while b) on c) during d) when

3. A kettle is used .... water.

a) boil b) to boil c) boils d) boiling

4. Amr .... much experience in his life. He is a hard-working man.

a) won b) earned c) gained d) lost

5. Tamer works .... a company that designs clothes.

a) on b) for c) with d) to

Skills Corner

1) Buying something in a shop : لشراء شئ فى محل :

Customer / Client زبون / عميل	Shop assistant بائع فى محل
1. Which items do you sell ?	- We have all the kitchen items.
2. Which items do you think is the most expensive ? أى الأجهزة هى الاكثر ثمناً / الأغلى سعراً ؟	- The microwave is the most expensive.
3. Do you have a sale ? هل لديكم عرض أوكازيون ؟	- Yes, we have a big sale on toasters.

2) Talking about things in the home : للتحدث عن أشياء فى المنزل :

Questions ?	Answers
1. Which useful items do you have in your house ?	- We have kettle, coffee machine, microwave, toaster, ... etc.
2. Which items of them do you think is the most useful ?	- I think the microwave.
3- Which of the items do you think is the nicest to look at ?	- I think the coffee machine. It's fantastic.
4- Do you normally buy things that are the usual price, or wait for deals or discounts ?	- I always wait for deals or discounts because they save a lot of money for me.

2) Discussing a complaint : لمناقشة شكوى :

Customer	Assistant
1. I want to make a complaint.	- What's the problem ?
2. I ordered a phone two days ago from your website, but received a different one.	- I'm very sorry about that. I'll give orders to the delivery to change it in 5 hours.

1. What do you want to buy ?	- I want to buy a microwave.
2. What's your problem ?	- My computer turned off suddenly.
3. What is the most useful item in your house ?	- The fridge is the most important item.

3) Speaking Corner :-

Describing a problem with technology : لوصف مشكلة مع التكنولوجيا

1. I bought a new mobile yesterday.

2. The mobile fell off while I was running.

3. The screen was damaged and I was very sad.

4. I went to the shop to have another screen.

4) Writing Corner

A. **" Handicrafts in the south of Egypt "** الحرف اليدوية فى جنوب مصر

1. The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful handicrafts.
2. You can buy beautiful carpets, baskets and colourful pots.
3. Women, there, are so clever.
4. Tourists like these handicrafts.

B. Writing a formal Email.

" Model formal email" نموذج لرسالة بريد إلكترونى رسمي

Imagine that you work for a shop in another country. You want to buy some items from Egyptian handicrafts to sell. Send a formal email to Mr. Ali, the manager of big handicraft business in Cairo. Mr Ali's email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your name is Ahmad and your email address is ahmad@freebusiness.com.

From : ahmad@freebusiness.com

To : ali@yahoo.com

Subject : Asking about some Egyptian handicrafts

Dear Mr. Ali,

I am interested in buying some of your handicrafts to sell in my private shop in London. Can you send me a list of your handicraft products and their prices ? I would like to know how long the delivery will take and how much will it cost. Do you have special offers ? Also, I want to have an idea about the sizes and colours of your products.

Yours faithfully,
Ahmad

Writing Corner **"The coffee machine "**

1. The coffee machine is my favourite item.
2. I bought one as a present for my father.
3. It makes a really delicious cup of coffee.

C) Writing a product Review

Write a product review about a coffee machine advertised online.

This is a new type of coffee machines. It is produced by a good producer. It is made of good materials. It is safe and easy to use. It is available in two colours ; red or black. However, the machine is expensive compared to other machines. It also uses much more electricity than similar products. If you don't mind paying more for the product and the electricity it will use, then you can buy this high-quality coffee machine.

---

1. The lion is **more dangerous than** the dog. 3. **Both** Ahmad **and** Ayman visited Alexandria.

2. The kettle is **cheaper than** the computer. 5. **Neither** Heba **nor** Marwa did the homework.

4. While I was driving home, I saw an accident.

Revision General Exercises on Unit (1)

1. As we were .... into the museum. We saw lots of old statues.

   a) walk b) walks c) walked d) walking

2. What .... do you like to wear ?

   a) foods b) clothes c) tickets d) jobs

3. You can see trees and other interesting plants at the ....

   a) botanical gardens b) bank c) library d) sports centre

4. I saw a lot of Egyptian .... in the museum.

   a) moments b) monuments c) minutes d) traffic

5. I go to school every day, except .... Friday I go to my grandpa's farm.

   a) on b) in c) at d) of

6. The cat is sitting .... the chair.

   a) under b) between c) next d) in

7. When I travel to a new city, I ask about the .... to reach the place I want.

   a) gardens b) orders c) files d) directions

8. Next week, we have a holiday. We plan for a day .... the town.

   a) in b) out c) about d) on

9. You can catch a train from the ....

   a) pavement b) platform c) line d) road

10. There is a new .... for the ancient Egyptian statues in my city.

    a) room b) exhibition c) space d) play

11. We arrive at the station before the train .... the station.

    a) travels b) gets c) uses d) leaves

12. Cleaning the street is good for the .... It helps us get clean air.

    a) railway b) environment c) travel d) space

13. My friend has sent me a/an .... of her sister's wedding.

    a) advice b) invention c) advert d) invitation

14. A year is 365 days but a .... is a hundred years.

    a) decade b) score c) century d) season

15. We study a lot this week. I am looking .... the weekend to visit my uncle.

    a) around b) forward to c) up d) forward

16. My friend invited me to his birthday party, he said "................. to my birthday party ?"

    a) Why don't you come b) When do you come
    c) Why do you come d) When are you coming

17. Which of the following is a form of transportation ? - ....

    a) Bean b) Metro c) Machine d) Branch

18. There isn't a lot of traffic in our city so there isn't much ....

a) pollution b) places c) kitchens d) buildings

19. We will have a new .... for Egyptian products in our city next month.

a) room b) exhibition c) space d) play

20. I go shopping .... Friday.

a) in b) on c) at d) to

21. .... don't we go to Alexandria ?

a) When b) What c) Why d) How

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- What time .... (do) the match start ?

2- I usually ....(going) to school by bus.

3- The morning train ....(leave) at 7:30.

4- My parents ....(goes) to the theatre with a friend now.

5- The first train ....(travel) at 4 a.m. every day.

3) Complete the following dialogue :-

Adam is buying a ticket at a train station.

Adam : Good morning. I want to travel to Port Said, please.

Assistant : (1) ....?

Adam : Can I travel in the early morning on Sunday ?

Assistant : Yes of course. How do you like to travel ?

Adam : (2) ....

Assistant : (3) ....?

Adam : Because the train is more comfortable than a car.

Assistant : But I think a car is faster, isn't it ?

Adam : Yes, but (4) ....

Assistant : This means that you like to take photos during the journey.

Adam : (5) ....

Assistant : All right, I will see which morning train goes to Port Said.

Revision General Exercises on Unit (2)

1. The museum has a great collection of ancient Egyptian ....

a) monuments b) directions c) minutes d) sellers

2. I asked the teacher again to .... sure that I understood well.

a) do b) see c) make d) take

3. I bought a .... to make tea at office. It works by electricity.

a) kitten b) kettle c) pot d) glass

4. You can see a lot of products at the company's ....

a) website b) wig c) work d) word

5. I bought a lot of things online. The .... will be after three days.

a) industry b) buying c) selling d) delivery

6. If the price is high you can ask for a/an .... to buy at a less price.

a) discount b) account c) order d) site

7. I need to .... the phone to make it work all day.

a) charge b) plug c) separate d) change

8. This website needs a personal .... Don't give it to anyone.

a) word b) cell c) password d) time

9. When electricity went off, he .... his work on the laptop.

a) won b) lost c) did d) made

10. I will .... my homework in the evening.

a) do b) make c) get d) have

11. I bought a new pair of shoes, but I couldn't put them on. They were the ...... size.

a) good b) correct c) wrong d) right

12. I'm very sorry .... that problem. I will help you.

a) about b) with c) on d) at

13. If you need to .... a complaint, try not to get angry.

a) do b) play c) ask d) make

14. If something is ...., it means very bag or unpleasant.

a) positive b) horrible c) attractive d) grateful

15. To .... means to make something more attractive.

a) text b) decorate c) guess d) charge

16. I bought an electric .... to make tea easier.

a) toaster b) coffee machine c) kettle d) fridge

17. I made a/an .... to buy a new laptop online.

a) order b) complaint c) present d) design

2) Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- What were you ....(do) at 8 o'clock yesterday ?

2- Nada was ....(brush) her teeth.

3- I was reading a book when the light ....(go) out.

4- I moved into a new house which is ....(wide) than mine.

5- My brother got ....(good) marks than I did.

6- What ....(is) Sama doing at seven o'clock last night ?

7- They ....(either) run nor play. They just stay at home.

3) Complete the following dialogue :-

Janet wants to make a complaint about a coffee machine.

Janet : I went to the supermarket yesterday and I bought a coffee machine

Leila : (1) ....

Janet : But it didn't work.

Leila : (2) ....?

Janet : Yes. But it didn't work.

Leila : (3) ....?

Janet : It was on sale.

Leila : How about the quality ?

Janet : (4) ....

Leila : People generally buy things for less price and less quality.

Janet : So what must I do ?

Leila : (5) ....

Revision General Exercises on Unit (3)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I ordered a book online but they didn't send it on time. It was a .... delivery.
   a) careful b) late c) right d) back

2. The fish was not a good one. It has a .... smell.
   a) terrifying b) tasty c) horrible d) nice

3. At night it was so dark outside because the .... were off.
   a) streetlights b) light streets c) street lumps d) lamp streets

4. When my younger brother does something good, I .... him.
   a) discourage b) blame c) encourage d) explain

5. In my community, all people have .... rights.
   a) equal b) angry c) lazy d) active

6. To be .... online, you must keep your personal information secret.
   a) safe b) save c) brave d) grave

7. .... is the art of good beautiful handwriting.

a) Calligraphy b) Biography c) Geography d) Autobiography

8. My father worked hard this week. He needs to ....

a) remix b) relax c) fix d) work

9. .... me a call if you need help !

a) Give b) Do c) Make d) Have

10. In our city there is a .... place which we visit to see ancient things.

a) history b) historic c) historian d) historical

11. To start a topic we say "............... ".

a) Last b) Secondly c) Firstly d) Finally

12. To end the idea we talk about, we write to ....

a) conclude b) summarise c) add d) start

13. I usually meet him in the morning but just to .... him and go.

a) add b) greet c) count d) include

14. He has a lot of money. ...., he doesn't have a car.

a) Whatever b) Whoever c) However d) Because

15. What kind of .... do you want to live in ?

a) community b) charity c) opportunity d) project

2) Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- My friend is .... (interest) in riding bicycles.

2- The film was not fun. We got .... (bore) and went out.

3- The government .... (build) new sports centres in Cairo next summer.

4- The journey .... (going) to start in April.

5- Is he going .... (trying) windsurfing ?

6- What are you .... (go) to do next summer ?

7- They knew the result of the test .... (so) of his happiness.

8- Heba thought that Inky was ill ....(because) she was surprised to see her at school.

9- I didn't like the book he gave me it was .... (bore).

10- My friend was .... (excite) when he knew the results of the exam.

11- I .... (not going) travel to England this month.

12- What .... (you go) to do next week ?

3) Complete the following dialogue :-

Fady asks his friend, Sherif about his job.

Fady : Are you still working in Hurghada ?

Sherif : No, I'm afraid (1) ....

Fady : Oh, dear, I'm sorry to hear that. (2) ....?

Sherif : I've been out of work for three months only.

Fady : (3) .... ?

Sherif : I'm looking for a new job at another company.

Fady : I think it isn't easy to find a job, what kind of jobs are you searching for?

Sherif : (4) ....

Fady : I wish you good luck.

Sherif : (5) ....

Mini-Test on Unit (1)

1. Complete the following dialogue :-

Ahmad is talking to a clerk in the train station.

Ahmad : Where does the train to Aswan leave from ?

Clerk : (1) ....

Ahmad : Platform five ! (2) ....?

Clerk : The next train leaves in 5 minutes.

Ahmad : (3) ....?

Clerk : It takes 7 hours to reach Aswan.

Ahmad : Are there any other trains to Aswan ?

Clerk : (4) ....

Ahmad : What time does this one leave ?

Clerk : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer :-

1. Tourists can see a lot of .... in the Egyptian Museum.
   a) animals b) pyramids c) monuments d) canals
2. Which .... does the train leave from ?
   a) ticket b) platform c) library d) office
3. The journey to Luxor was .... I enjoyed a lot.
   a) boring b) comfortable c) hard d) ugly
4. You can see beautiful fish at the ....
   a) cinema b) bank c) aquarium d) museum
5. I need to .... some money from the bank.
   a) lend b) borrow c) give d) put
6. How .... I go from Cairo to Qena ?
   a) does b) do c) done d) doing

3) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Your journey to Luxor by train "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Mini-Test on Unit (2)

1. Complete the following dialogue :-

Ahmad is making a complaint.

Assistant : How can I help you, sir ?

Ahmad : My computer suddenly (1) ....

Assistant : Was it logged in before turning off ?

Ahmad : Yes, (2) ....

Assistant : (3) ....?

Ahmad : Yes, I was charging it.

Assistant : (4) ....?

Ahmad : Yes, I turned it on again but it said my password was wrong.

Assistant : I'll send you some steps to follow.

Ahmad : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer :-

1. You can make hot drinks using a ....

a) toaster b) coffee machine c) fridge d) microwave

2. This shops has a .... All the clothes are cheaper than usual.

a) sail b) sell c) sale d) seal

3. What is the .... on the clothes ?

a) dial b) deal c) dear d) deer

4. When you are unhappy about something, you can make a ....

a) mistake b) discount c) complaint d) fire

5. .... people think only about bad things.

a) Healthy b) Negative c) Positive d) Clever

6. We .... the flat for my sister's birthday.

a) damaged b) burnt c) decorated d) took

---

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Your mobile is .... (cheap) than mine. ....

2- Neither Heba .... (or) Sara visted Luxor. ....

3- .... (Either) Ahmad and Alaa are happy. ....

4- The phone .... (break) while I was running. ....

Unit (3) My Community

Lessons (1&2)

community (n)	المجتمع	heroes (n)	أبطال
headings (n)	عناوين رئيسية	aim to (v)	يهدف إلى
survey (n)	دراسة إستطلاعية	encourage (d) (v)	يُشجع
leisure activities (n)	أنشطة ترفيهية	neighbourhood (n)	حى الجوار – منطقة الجوار
sports activities (n)	أنشطة رياضية	community events(n)	الأحداث المجتمعية
local facilities (n)	مرافق محلية	disappointed (adj)	مُحبط – خائب الأمل
equal opportunities(n)	فرص متكافئة	initiative (n)	مبادرة
education (n)	التعليم	rural areas (n)	مناطق ريفية
community projects	مشاريع مجتمعية	pavement (n)	رصيف شارع
local shops	أسواق محلية	young people (n)	الشباب
streetlight (n)	مصباح الشارع	driving (n)	القيادة
meeting (n)	إجتماع – إلتقاء	works of art (n)	أعمال فنية
elderly (adj)	متقدم فى السن	transport (n)	النقل (المواصلات)
disabled people (n)	الأشخاص ذوى الإعاقة/ الهمم	deliver (ed) (v)	يُوصل - يُسلِمْ
health (n)	الصحة	surprise (d) (v), (n)	يُدهش – يُفاجئ
decent life	حياة كريمة	object (n)	شئ
job opportunities (n)	فرص عمل	effect (n)	تأثير
in addition (adv)	بالإضافة إلى	situation (n)	موقف
businesses (n)	مشاريع تجارية	expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع
solve (d) (v)	يحل (مشكلة مثلاً)	festival (n)	مهرجان – إحتفال
plan (ned) (v)	يُخطط - خطة	washing machine (n)	غسالة

Lessons (3&4)

lodger (n)	ساكن – نزيل	kindness (n)	حَسِن المعاملة – عطف / طيبة
bench (n)	مقعد (ثابت)	graffiti (n)	كتابة ورسوم على الجدران
greet (ed) (v)	يُحيى – يُرحب	forms of communication	أشكال الإتصال / التواصل
meetings	إجتماعات	social network services	خدمات شبكة التواصل الإجتماعى
local newspaper	جريدة محلية	posters	الملصقات
community centre	مركز خدمة المجتمع	leaflets	منشورات – كُتيبات
noticeboard	لوحة إعلانات	local radio station	محطات الإذاعة المحلية

communicate (d) (v)	يتصل – يتواصل	business (n)	عمل تجارى
matters (n)	شئون – أمور – قضايا	experience (n)	خبرة – تجربة حياتية
message of thanks	رسالة شكر	darkness (n)	الظلام
food market (n)	سوق المواد الغذائية	weakness (n)	ضعف
pleased (adj)	مسرور	illness (n)	مرض
visitors (n)	زوار – ضيوف	topic (n)	موضوع
sweetness (n)	حلاوة – عذوبة	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
calligraphy (n)	فن تحسين الخط	relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى
leaf (n) – leaves	ورقة شجر / أوراق الشجر	media (n)	وسائل الإعلام
salty (adj)	مالح	play (ed) (v), (n)	يعزف / يلعب / يُمثل – مسرحية
pleasant (adj)	لطيف – ممتع	tenant (n)	مستأجر
healthy meal (n)	وجبة صحية	factory (n)	مصنع
furniture (n)	أثاث (عفش المنزل)	imagine (d) (v)+ v-ing	يتخيل

Lessons (5&6)

happiness (n)	سعادة – إبتهاج	tourist attraction (n)	عامل جذب سياحى
however (adv)	ومع ذلك	furthermore (adv)	علاوة على ذلك
firstly (adv)	أولاً	in addition (adv)	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
summarise (v)	يلخص – يُوجز	conclude (d) (v)	يختم – يُنهى
introduce (d) (v)	يُقدم	adult (n) , (adj)	بالغ - راشد
greetings (n)	تحيات	introductions (n)	مُقدمات
language (n)	لغة	daughter (n)	إبنة
situation (n)	موقف (حياتى)	repair (ed) (v) , (n)	يُصلح – إصلاح
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
extra (adj)	إضافى	contact (ed) (v)	يتصل
contrast (n)	تباين – تناقض	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج
builder (n)	عامل بناء	result (n)	نتيجة
anymore (adv)	على الإطلاق – أبداً	Heisa (n)	هيسا (جزيرة نوبية فى أسوان)

Conjugation of Irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يعتقد – يفكر	thought	thought
put up يُشيد – يقيم	put up	put up
know يعرف	knew	known
read يقرأ	read	read

come	يأتى	came	come
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
meet	يقابل	met	met
become	يصبح	became	become
say	يقول	said	said
write	يكتب	wrote	written
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Study these definitions

making a difference	having a good effect on a person, place or situation.
surprised	what you feel when you do not expect something strange unusual.
encourage	to try to make people do something by giving support and advice.
neighbourhood	a small area of a town and the people who live there.
greeted	said hello.
lodger	someone who pays to live in another person's house.
paid	gave money for work someone has done.
tenant	someone pays to live in a house.

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

make	a difference	يُحدث تغيير
	sentences about	يُكون جمل عن
have	a good effect on	له تأثير جيد على
show	a problem	يعرض مشكلة
	new works of art	يعرض أعمال فنية جديدة
send	lots of text messages	يرسل الكثير من الرسائل النصية
build	new sports centre	يبنى مركز رياضى جديد
put up	new streetlights	يُركب / يُثبت اضواء جديدة للشوارع
plant	flowers in	يزرع زهور فى

Important Expressions & Prepositions

find out about	يكتشف عن	deliver ... to	يُسلم ... إلى ...
make .... safer	يجعله أكثر أماناً	a group of	مجموعة من ...
start a project	يبدأ مشروع	encourage .... to	يُشجع / يحث ... على ...
discuss a problem	يناقش مشكلة	expect something strange	يتوقع شيئاً غريباً
live in ...	يعيش فى ..	improve the town's facilities	يطور / يُحسن مرافق المدينة
people of all ages	أشخاص من جميع الأعمار	hear about	يسمع عن

travel around	يتجول	have a better education by	يحصل على تعليم أفضل بواسطة
decide to	يقرر أن	give work	يوفر فرص عمل لـ ..
give support and advice	يقدم الدعم والمشورة	communicate with	يتواصل مع ..
forms of communication	أشكال الإتصال / التواصل	in need	فى إحتياج
social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الإجتماعى	move to	ينتقل أو يعزل إلى
felt unwell	شعر بأنه ليس على ما يرام	covered in	مُغطى بـ ..
sit on a bench	يجلس على مقعد ثابت	graffiti on the walls	رسوم (جرافيتى) على الأسوار
for a rest	للراحة	no facilities for	لا توجد مرافق/ تسهيلات لـ ..
help with	يساعد فى ...	improve the situation	يُحسن الموقف
have experience in	لديه / له خبرة فى ...	pleased to meet you	مسرور بمقابلتك
give me a call	يتصل بى (تلفونياً)	pay for	يدفع من أجل ...
(be) closed on Saturday	يكون مغلق يوم السبت	say hello	يُرحب بـ
introduce ... to ...	يقدم .. إلى ...	show kindness	يُظهر العطف
give reasons for	يعطى أسباب لـ ..	for sale	للبيع
Nice to meet you!	من اللطيف أن أقابلك!	donate food to people	يتبرع بطعام للناس
match ... with ...	يوصل .. بـ ...	please contact me	من فضلك إتصل بى
a friend of yours / mine ... etc.	صديق لك / لى ..	the problem with...	المشكلة فى ..
in the same football team	فى نفس فريق كرة القدم	answer to ..	إجابة لـ / حل لـ ..
look old	يبدو قديماً / عجوزاً	write a conclusion	يكتب ملخصاً / الخلاصة
at our community meeting	فى لقاء مجتمعى	add extra information	يُضيف مزيد من المعلومات
decide to	يقرر أن	give contrasting information	يعطى معلومات إضافية
look like	يُشبه	clean up	ينظف
work on a project	يعمل على إنجاز مشروع	invite ... to	يدعو إلى
the front door	الباب الأمامى		

Vocabulary Study :- Synonyms and Antonyms المترادفات والمتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف لها (نفس المعنى)	Antonym / opposite المضاد للكلمة	
elderly	متقدم بالسن	old	young	صغير السن
safe	آمن	protected	dangerous / risky	خطير
strange	غريب	abnormal	ordinary / normal	عادى – طبيعى
near	قريب	close – nearly	far – remote	بعيد
wide	واسع – عريض	large – broad	narrow	ضيق
disappointed	مُحبط – خائب الأمل	upset	content	راض – قانع
deliver	يوصل – يُسلم	carry / bring	take / receive	يأخذ / يستلم
leisure	ترفيه	relaxation	pressure / stress	ضغط / توتر
kind	طيب	friendly	unkind	غير طيب – قاسٍ

well سليم – معافِ	fit / good	ill – unwell ليس على ما يرام - مريض
remember يتذكر	keep in mind	forget ينسى
pleasant سار – لطيف	nice / good	unpleasant غير سار – مزعج
greet يرحب	welcome = say hello to	ignore يتجاهل
fail يفشل	miss / fall	pass = succeed يتجاز – ينجح
noisy صاخب / عالى الصوت	loud	quiet / silent هادئ / صامت
poor فقير	needy	rich / wealthy غنى
formal رسمى	official	informal غير رسمى
suitable مناسب – ملائم	appropriate	unsuitable غير مناسب – غير ملائم
correct صحيح	right	incorrect / wrong غير صحيح/خطأ
improve يُحسن / يطور	develop	damage يتلف / يدمر
happiness سعادة – إبتهاج	joy / pleasure / elation	sadness حزن
helpful مفيد – مساعد	useful	helpless – useless غير مفيد ضعيف – عاجز

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. "Near" and "Close" are ....

a) synonyms b) antonyms c) different d) opposite

2. The antonym of "strange" is ....

a) normal b) abnormal c) unusual d) difficult

3. "..............." has the same meaning of "upset."

a) Content b) Disappointed c) Narrow d) Light

4. To give the opposite of the word "usual" we add the prefix ....

a) ir- b) in- c) un- d) im-

5. The noun "health" can be an adjective by adding ....

a) –ly b) –ed c) –ing d) –y

6. The opposite of "ill" is ....

a) will b) well c) wall d) wheel

7. "Kind" has the same meaning of "...............".

a) unkind b) afraid c) frightened d) friendly

8. "..........." means to say hello to someone.

a) Greet b) Great c) Grow d) Cover

9. We add (-ness) to the word "weak" to form a/an ....

a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) adverb

10. The prefix "........" gives the opposite of "pleasant".

a) un- b) ir- c) im- d) in-

11. "Right" is the synonym of "............".

a) correct b) light c) left d) formal

12. The opposite of "official" is "..............." .

a) informal b) suitable c) warm d) wrong

13. The adjective "warm" can be an adverb by adding "............".

a) –ed b) –ing c) –er d) –ly

14. To give the opposite of the word "formal" we add the prefix "..........".

a) in- b) im- c) un- d) dis-

15. The word "Firstly" is a/an ....

a) verb b) adverb c) pronoun d) adjective

General notes on Reading & Listening

1) include / contain

*** include (d) (v)** يتضمن – يشتمل على

ex. : Don't **include** fat in your diet. It's unhealthy.

*** contain (ed) (v)** يحتوى على

ex. : This pot **contains** too much oil.

---

2) throw (threw – thrown)

*** throw away** يرمى- يتخلص من

ex. : She **threw away** all her old clothes.

***throw into** يرمى فى (بداخل)

ex. : She **threw** her old doll **into** the rubbish bin.

---

3) everyone كل شخص

ex. : **Everyone** is going to the stadium. **They** want to support **their** team.

لاحظ: تُعامل **everyone** معاملة المفرد، ولكن يُعوض عنها بالضمير **They** فى الجملة الثانية وصفة الملكية **their**.

---

4) between – among

*** between .... and** بين (أثنين)

ex. : Baher is standing **between** Ali **and** Tamer.

*** among (amongst)** بين (أكثر من إثنين)

ex. : I like living **amongst** my family and relatives.

5) because / because of لأن (تُعبر عن السبب)

*** because +** جملة كاملة

ex. : **(SB)** I was really surprised **because** I found the questions difficult.

*** because of + (n. / inf. + ing)**

ex. : I cancelled the journey **because of** the bad weather.

: - I didn't go to school **because of being** ill.

---

6) the police الشرطة

لاحظ أن : كلمة **(police)** تُعامل دائماً معاملة الجمع ويأتى قبلها **(The)**

ex. : (**WB**) **The police are** stopping people from driving too fast.

---

1) lodger / tenant

- A **lodger** is a person who pays rent to live in somebody's house.

الساكن / النزيل هو شخص يدفع إيجار ليعيش فى منزل شخص ما.

- A **tenant** is a person who pays rent for the use of a room, building, land, etc. to the person who owns it.

المستأجر هو شخص يدفع إيجاراً لإستخدام حجرة، مبنى ، أو أرض .... إلخ للشخص الذى يمتلكه.

---

2) thanks to / thanks for

*** Thanks to** بفضل / بسبب

ex. : **Thanks to** your help, I succeeded in my exams.

*** Thanks for (n/inf.+ing)** شكراً لـ / على

ex. : **Thanks for** helping me/ your help. I won't forget it forever.

---

3) help

*** help .... with ...** يساعد .... فى ...

ex. : I **helped** my little sister **with** her homework.

***help .... (inf.** مصدر**) / (to + inf.** المصدر **)**

ex. : I **help** my little sister **do** (**to do**) her homework.

---

4) experience / experiment

*** experience (n)** خبرة (إسم لا يُعد)

ex. : Mr. Badrawi has got a lot of **experience**.

*** experiences (n)** تجارب حياتية

ex. : I've a lot of **experiences** in my life.

*** experiment (n)** تجربة معملية

ex. : In science lessons, we do **experiments**.

5) historic / historical

*** historic** تاريخى (له أهمية فى التاريخ) مثلاً مكان أثرى.

ex. : This building is historic. It was built 300 years ago.

***historical = related to history** تاريخى (متعلق بالتاريخ)

ex. : This book is **historical**. It is about Mohammed Ali.

---

1) as / like

*** as +** وظيفة كـ...

ex. : Haleem works as a doctor. تدل على أن الفاعل يقوم بهذه الوظيفة .

*** like +** وظيفة

* Haleem works like a doctor. He always checks before saying a word.

---

2) in addition to / in addition / furthermore, / ,however,

*** in addition to ... (n.** إسم **/ inf. + ing)** بالإضافة لـ

ex. : In addition to being a trader تاجر, he works as a primary school teacher.

*** in addition +** فاعل **+** فعل **....** بالإضافة

ex. : He works as a primary school teacher. In addition, he is a trader.

*** furthermore** علاوة على ذلك

ex. : (**SB**) – It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.

*** however – but** ومع ذلك – برغم ذلك – ولكن

ex. : He is strong, **but** he can't carry the box.

- He is strong. **However**, he can't carry the box.

- He is strong, **however**, he can't carry the box.

---

3) formal / informal

*** formal language** لغة رسمية (لاحظ إن اللغة الرسمية تستخدم مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم).

*** informal language** لغة غير رسمية (لاحظ إن اللغة الغير رسمية تستخدم مع الأسرة والأصدقاء).

---

4) هناك بعض التعبيرات يستخدمها كاتب الرسالة / المقال لبدء أو إنهاء الرسالة / المقال

***Firstly, ... = To start with, ...** أولاً ، لنبدأ بـ ..

*** To conclude, ...**

*** To summarise, = To sum up**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. A/An .... is a small area and the people who live in it.

a) facility b) community c) opportunity d) survey

2. There are many local .... for the elderly and disabled people in our country.

a) differences b) problems c) facilities d) streetlights

3. Many young people do .... activities such as swimming and other sports.

a) scientific b) disabled c) abnormal d) leisure

4. When you try to make people do something by giving support and advice, you.......them.

a) encourage b) invent c) explore d) text

5. (SB) To .... means to take a letter or package to a building.

a) deliver b) encourage c) discuss d) feel

6. (WB) There are lots of .... activities for young people, such as volleyball and tennis.

a) hungry b) careful c) sports d) angry

7. (WB) The school is .... up new lights in the playground.

a) writing b) putting c) reading d) stopping

8. (SB) You feel .... when you do not expect something strange or unusual.

a) excited b) interested c) bored d) surprised

9. (SB) You can make a .... when you have a good effect on a person, place or situation.

a) reference b) difference c) heading d) reason

10. A .... is an animal event with lots of activities and beautiful shows.

a) holiday b) spring c) festival d) school day

11. When he didn't pass the test, he felt ....

a) proud b) excited c) interested d) disappointed

12. The President started the Decent Life .... for poor people who live in villages.

a) Effect b) Initiative c) Festival d) Machine

13. Smoking has a bad effect .... lungs.

a) of b) at c) in d) on

14. The government tries to .... work for young people.

a) fail b) find c) pass d) make

15. Everyone is happy. .... have won the match.

a) He b) She c) They d) It

16. Ten children .... two girls were killed in a car accident near Assuit.

a) containing b) including c) having d) doing

---

1. The film was .... I got bored, so I stopped watching it.

a) bored b) bore c) boring d) boredom

2. She was .... to hear that the museum was closed.

a) disappoint b) disappointed c) disappointing d) disappoints

3. The school .... up new lights in the playground next week.

a) puts b) is putting c) going to put d) put

4. Samy .... his birthday party next October.

a) has b) had c) is having d) having

5. (SB) The plane is ....

a) exciting b) excited c) excite d) excites

6. (WB) The town .... a new sports centre next year.

a) build b) built c) is building d) builds

7. (WB) Volunteers ....flowers in the park next month.

a) plant b) are planting c) planted d) plants

8. (WB) Today's maths lesson was very ....

a) interest b) interested c) interests d) interesting

9. I was very .... when I came first.

a) surprise b) surprising c) surprises d) surprised

10. This new city is .... There are many great buildings here.

a) amaze b) amazement c) amazed d) amazing

11. Salma .... dinner now. She can't help you with your homework.

a) is cooking b) cooks c) was cooking d) has cooked

12. I was ...., so I stopped watching that match

a) bore b) boring c) bored d) boredom

13. Hassan was .... when he knew that the match was cancelled.

a) disappoint b) disappointed c) disappointing d) disappointment

---

<u>2) Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-</u>

1- (SB) I was ....(disappoint) to hear that the community centre was closing.

2- (SB) Wael is ....(interest). He lives on a boat.

3- (SB) That is a very ....(interest) building, said the architect.

4- (WB) The children are very ....(excite) because they have a new toy.

5- My mother ....(prepare) now for tomorrow's party.

6- I was ....(amazing) when I saw the number of people in the stadium.

7- The trip to the High Dam was very ....(excited).

8- Ayman booked a ticket. He ....(travels) to Alexandria tomorrow.

9- It was ....(bored) to watch the same film twice.

10- What ....(they do) for the meeting next Saturday ?

Read and complete :-

(encourage – amazed – amazing – safer – pavements)

1- I think we should make our streets ....

2- Posters are made to .... people to throw away their rubbish.

3- The museum is ....! There are so many old things there.

4- Our roads have wide ....

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Magdi wants to join a charity and asks his friend, Hamid about his opinion.

Magdi : Good evening, Hamdi. I want to ask you for advice. Are you free ?

Hamdi : (1)......................... . What do you want ?

Magdi : I want to do voluntary work. (2) ....?

Hamdi : You should join a charity.

Magdi : (3) .... ?

Hamdi : You can go there and fill in a form to join them.

Magdi : Do you know any charity in our neighbourhood ?

Hamdi : (4) ....

Magdi : Can you come with me ?

Hamdi : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Good people often .... a difference in their neighbourhood.

a) make b) do c) encourage d) get

2. The initiative has helped more children to have a better .... by building schools.

a) health b) education c) situation d) neighbourhood

3. It's better to buy your needs from .... shops to encourage them.

a) local b) strange c) foreign d) remote

4. I .... that he'll come early as usual.

a) respect b) expect c) except d) accept

5. Young people help to .... food to the poor in our community.

a) put b) deliver c) diver d) plan

6. What fact might .... you about the Decent Life Initiative ?

a) expect b) solve c) plan d) surprise

7. (WB) I live in a great community. There are lots of sports .... for young people there.

a) theatres b) volunteers c) lines d) activities

8. They .... their flat next weekend.

a) were going to paint b) are painting

c) were painting d) are painted

9. (SB) We .... a project next week.

a) are starting b) start c) started d) going to start

10. (WB) The walk over the mountains was beautiful but it was very ....

a) tire b) tired c) tiring d) tires

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- The players ....(play) an important match next week.

2- Rania ....(clean) her room tomorrow. It's arranged.

3- I was really ....(surprising) to know that you failed your exam.

4- It is a very ....(excited) film. I'll watch it again.

4) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(strange – disabled – facilities – pavements – community)

I live in a great (1) .... There are lots of sports activities for young people, such as volleyball and tennis clubs. There are also many local (2) ....for people of all ages, including a great theatre and a history museum. Our roads have wide (3).............., so it is not a problem for (4) .... people to travel around.

5) (SB) Write a short article for a website of about (110) words on :-

" What you can do to help people in your community "

....
....
....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Exercises on Lessons 3/4

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I read an interesting .... about the new museum.

a) leaf b) meeting c) station d) leaflet

2. They put some .... in the park, for people to sit on for a rest.

a) tables b) benches c) beds d) games

3. I listen to many local radio .... on my phone.

a) decisions b) situations c) noticeboards d) stations

4. There is an article about my school in the local ....

a) newspapers b) neighbours c) benches d) leaflets

5. Tourists are always pleased by the .... of the Egyptians.

a) weakness b) darkness c) kindness d) illness

6. (SB) I was disappointed to see the .... on the walls of the town hall.

a) leaflet b) graffiti c) network d) service

7. (WB) When we arrived at my grandparents' house, they came outside to ....us.

a) greet b) need c) plant d) bleed

8. (WB) It was sunny, so we were surprised by the .... of the forest.

a) darkness b) kindness c) illness d) weakness

9. (WB) The teacher will put a message about the new art class on the ....

a) park b) bank c) noticeboard d) note

10. After finishing school, he started his own ....

a) neighbour b) business c) traffic d) darkness

11. .... you are rich, what will you buy ?

a) Include b) Imagine c) Find d) Pay

12. When you meet someone for the first time, you can say "............... **to meet you".**

a) Afraid b) Pleased c) Local d) Terrible

13. Thanks .... my elder brother, I could achieve my goal and be a surgeon.

a) for b) with c) about d) to

14. My neighbour's house is covered .... painting and writings.

a) in b) of c) about d) at

15. .... me a call if you need help.

a) Talk b) Do c) Give d) Send

16. There is a lot of .... buildings in Egypt.

a) history b) historian c) historic d) historical

17. He is very old. Sure, he has a lot of ....

a) experiments b) experiences c) experts d) darkness

---

1. I'm going to .... to Alexandria next weekend.

a) travelling b) travelled c) travel d) travels

2. She ....buy a new car. She has decided that.

a) going to b) is going to c) go to d) going

3. There are a lot of dark clouds. It ....

a) will rain b) is raining c) is going to rain d) rains

4. (SB) We ....the walls, which are covered in graffiti and old posters.

a) are painted b) are going to paint c) paint d) paints

5. (SB) What are we .... about it ?

a) going to do b) do c) will do d) did

6. (WB) What is going ....next Saturday ?

a) to happen b) happened c) happens d) happening

7. (WB) Volunteers are going to ....up the park at 9 a.m.

a) cleaning b) cleans c) cleaned d) clean

8. The manager .... a meeting next Sunday, it's planned.

a) is going to hold b) will hold c) held d) is holding

9. Heba intends to stay at home. She .... go out.

a) won't b) isn't going to c) didn't d) doesn't

10. Ahmed decided to start his own business. He .... a clothes shop.

a) will open b) opens c) is going to open d) opening

11. They aren't going to .... their time watching TV.

a) wasted b) waste c) wasting d) wastes

12. Nour .... going to sleep early.

a) doesn't b) isn't c) hasn't d) never

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- (SB) The street ....(going) be closed on Saturday.

2- (SB) How are you going to ....(encouraged) people to help you do this ?

3- (WB) A famous architect is going to ....(talked) at the new museum at 4 pm.

4- (WB) The Shakespeare's play King Lear ....(going be) at the theatre at 6 pm.

5- It's cloudy. It ....(will) rain.

6- What are you going to ....(doing) for tomorrow's exam ?

7- My father ....(won't) stay in Cairo next summer. It's his plan.

8- Ashraf decided to paint his flat. He ....(will call) a painter.

9- My mother's intention is to help me study. She...............(will) explain this lesson for me.

4) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(Will – graffiti – is going to – Volunteers - lodger)

1- I was disappointed to see the .... on the walls.

2- It's dark. It .... rain.

3- ....are people who work for no money.

4- The new .... is very kind. His room is opposite mine.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Maya : What are you doing, Soha ?

Soha : (1) ....

Maya : A novel ! That's great. (2) ....?

Soha : I started reading it last week.

Maya : (3) ....?

Soha : The writer is called Charles Dickens.

Maya : What's the title of the novel ?

Soha : (4) ....

Maya : Oliver Twist ! Is it an exciting novel ?

Soha : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The girl gave the thief her bag .... fear.

a) for b) in c) about d) of

2. My father is busy today because he has lots of ....

a) volunteers b) nephews c) neighbours d) meetings

3. They will move .... their new flat next month.

a) to b) off c) with d) up

4. Deaf people always communicate .... each other in sign language.

a) on b) from c) with d) for

5. We will remove the .... on the wall of the important buildings. They are very bad.

a) ideas b) volunteers c) bricks d) graffiti

6. To keep in .... means to remember.

a) minutes b) fear c) mend d) mind

7. (SB) Do you .... with other people in your community ?

a) collect b) encourage c) correct d) communicate

8. Randa .... a new gold ring next week.

a) is bought b) is going to be bought c) is going to buy d) bought

9. What are those dark clouds ? - I think it ....

a) rains b) is going to rain c) will rain d) is raining

10. (SB) We are going .... our own social network service.

a) to start b) to starting c) start d) starting

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- ....(Be) you going to buy that flat ?

2- What time is she going to ....(finishing) the painting ?

3- (SB) What are we ....(go to) do about it ?

4- Marwa ....(going) meet her friend, Ola at the club. It's her decision.

4) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(streets – interested – pollution – plant - go)

We need more trees! A few of us are going to (1) .... some trees along the (2)............... . It will reduce (3) .... and also encourage more visitors to come to our town. Who is (4) .... in joining our project ?

5) Choose the correct word :-

1. (WB) Ahmad is not at school today because he is **ill / illness.**

2. (WB) Volunteers **are going to / will** clean up the park at 9 am.

6) Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Ahmad who lives in Emirates, about the problems in your community.

Your name is Mahmoud and your email address is mahmoud@gmail.com

Your friend's email address is ahmad@yahoo.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Exercises on Lessons 5/6

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. ...., enter the website. Secondly, fill in the form.

a) Furthermore b) Firstly c) However d) Then

2. To ...., we are looking for builders to help us complete the building.

a) contact b) greet c) introduce d) conclude

3. ....is the state of feeling or showing pleasure.

a) Weakness b) Happiness c) Illness d) Darkness

4. she was ill. ...., she went to the club this morning.

a) However b) Furthermore c) In addition d) In addition to

5. (WB) I'd like to ....myself. I'm your new teacher, Mrs. Leila.

a) meet b) paint c) introduce d) greet

6. (WB) You usually use .... language with people you do not know.

a) formal b) informal c) unsuitable d) local

7. (SB) When you write a/an .... , you can use the expression "To summarise".

a) introduction b) greeting c) conclusion d) contrasting

8. (SB) Use .... language with your family and friends.

a) formal b) informal c) foreign d) sign

9. I think the new museum will become a tourist .... for Egypt.

a) reaction b) result c) attraction d) reason

10. .... can be practiced on water when it is windy.

a) Windsurfing b) Swimming c) Volleyball d) Running

11. If you are interested to come with me, please .... me.

a) introduce b) contact c) communicate d) summarise

12. Shireen is a friend of ....

a) I b) me c) my d) mine

13. .... conclude, good always wins.

a) With b) At c) In d) To

14. What's the problem .... your bike, Basim ?

a) with b) for c) of d) by

15. Noha works ....a volunteer in a community charity.

a) like b) as c) so d) such

16. He's so hungry. He is eating .... a horse.

a) as b) so c) that d) like

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. (WB) Dareen is really enjoying the book ....(so) it is very exciting.

2. (WB) Heba though that Injy was ill ....(because) she was surprised to see her at school.

3. (WB) Kamal swam all along the beach ....(where) was very tiring.

4. I lived in the house ....(who) was built by my granddad.

4) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(conclude – project – cleans – clean - informal)

1- We usually use .... language with friends.

2- We are going to .... up the rubbish.

3- What is your .... about ?

4- To ...., we are looking for volunteers to help us.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Ahmad is introducing his brother Omar to his friend Mustafa.

Ahmad : Hello, Mustafa. This is my brother, Omar.

Mustafa : Hello, Ahmad. (1) .... How do you do, Omar ?

Omar : (2) ....

Mustafa : Where are you going ?

Omar : (3) ....

Ahmad : We are going to the supermarket, too.

Mustafa : (4) ....?

Ahmad : To buy some groceries. مشتريات بقالة

Mustafa : (5) ....?

Ahmad : of course, you can join us.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. When I met my teacher, he .... me warmly.

a) told b) spoke c) greeted d) shouted

2. (SB) We use "To conclude" to write a/an .... at the end of the topic.

a) introduction b) conclusion c) greeting d) result

3. We can use " ...." when we leave someone.

a) Pleased b) Bye c) Good evening d) Hi

4. You can use "Good morning" as a/an .... in the morning.

a) conclusion b) introduction c) greeting d) reason

5. I can't find my English book. I will look .... it in the living room.

a) at b) for c) after d) up

6. My mother asked me not to .... the same thing when I make a mistake. I should not repeat my mistakes.

a) do b) make c) have d) forgive

7. My teacher liked my research, but he asked me to .... extra information about the topic.

a) lend b) buy c) add d) advertise

8. .... with us next Monday ?

a) Were you travelling b) Did you travel

c) Do you travel d) Are you going to travel

9. I .... my father's car tomorrow.

a) am washed b) wash c) am going to wash d) washing

10. What .... about the town hall ?

a) you are going to do b) are going you to do

c) are going you to doing d) are you going to do

---

4) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(help – go – repair – Furthermore - proud)

Firstly, let me say how (1) .... we are of the castle in our town. However, it now needs some work. At our community meeting, we decided to improve the castle. We are going to get some builders to (2) .... the walls. (3) ...., children at the school are going to (4) .... clean up the rubbish.

---

5) (SB) Write a short article for a website of about (110) words on :-

" A social network service page about a community project "

....
....
....
....
....
....

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Unit (3)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Asraf is meeting a tourist in the Egyptian Museum.

Ashraf : Welcome to Egypt. How do you do ?

Tourist : Hello, (1) ....

Ashraf : (2) ....?

Tourist : I'm from Italy.

Ashraf : (3) ....?

Tourist : I will stay for a week.

Ashraf : Is this your first visit ?

Tourist : (4) .... I have come here three times before.

Ashraf : What's your opinion about the Egyptian people ?

Tourist : (5) .... Really ! I like them very much.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :-

Firstly, we all love our Children's Library. However, it now needs some work. The children don't like it anymore because it looks old and needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building. We want to invite people to help us. We got some ideas from the Mashrou E-Saada community project. There are many photos of this project. Every year, a group of people go to Heisa, near Aswan, to paint the houses in colours of happiness. We are going to do the same thing here ! It will make our library look exciting. Furthermore, the library will become a tourist attraction.

To conclude, we are looking for volunteers to help us plan and complete the project.

1. Explain why the children's library need some work. **Give two reasons**.

....

2. What is the relation between the library and the houses in Mashrou El-Saada ?

....

3. In your opinion of view, are libraries important ? Why / Why not ?

....

4. The passage is about ....

a) Renewing the children's library | b) voluntary work
c) our community | d) Mashrou El Saada

5. The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to ....

a) project b) community c) painting d) library

6. Which of the following was mentioned in the passage ....

a) the idea to make the library attractive
b) asking for volunteers to help them
c) painting houses in colours of happiness
d) the location of the library

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. We should take part in our community ....

a) messages b) shops c) events d) accidents

2. All people should have .... opportunities.

a) different b) difficult c) remote d) equal

3. It was very .... to sit under that tree drinking some tea.

a) pleasant b) pleased c) violent d) disappointed

4. We all often listen to our local radio .... daily.

a) pavement b) platform c) station d) situation

5. (SB) Your brother or sister's son is your ....

a) cousin b) nephew c) uncle d) parent

6. (WB) Ahmad is not at school today because he is ....

a) good b) careful c) ill d) well

7. (SB) I was very .... to learn how many people didn't have enough food.

a) surprised b) surprising c) bored d) boring

8. What time .... deliver the new washing machine ?

a) they are going to
b) are they going to
c) were they going to
d) they were going to

9. Amira intends to fix her broken laptop next week. This means that ....

a) she is going to fix it
b) she fixed it
c) she was fixing it
d) she fixes it

10. (SB) The community centre .... closed on Saturday next week.

a) is going b) is going to c) is going to be d) is going to being

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. When ....(they going) go shopping ?

2. Where ....(you go) to watch the match tomorrow ?

3. Adham ....(go) to take an English course next summer.

4. I ....(not going) travel to Luxor this week.

4) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(elderly – repeated – bench – greeted – along)

I'd like to say thank you to the young woman who helped me yesterday. I was walking (1) .... the pavement when I suddenly felt very tired. I'm (2)................, you see. A young woman saw me and (3) .... me warmly. She encouraged me to sit down on a (4) .... and have a rest.

6) Choose the correct word :-

1- (**WB**) Today's maths lesson was very **interested / interesting**. I learnt a lot.

2- What are you going to **do / doing** to improve the park ?

7) (WB) Write a story of about (110) words on :-

" A person who made a difference in your community "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

1) Min-Test on Unit (3) for Al-Azhar Students

1) Read and match :-

1. There are lots of sports activities	a. ( ) There are so many old things here.
2. This museum is amazing !	b. ( ) I prefer salty food.
3. I don't like the sweetness of chocolate.	c. ( ) with people we do not know.
4. We use formal language	d. ( ) which was very tiring.
5. Kamal swam all along the beach.	e. ( ) for young people in the community.
	f. ( ) social network service.

2) Read and correct the underlined words :-

1. We were disappointed to see the **calligraphy** on the walls of our town. (.......................)
2. I read an interesting **leaf** about a new museum. (.......................)
3. The park is going to **being** close on Monday. (.......................)
4. You can use **"Furthermore"** to write a conclusion. (.......................)
5. Hello ! I want to make a **complain**. (.......................)

2) Use your brain, think smart :-

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. That's rubbish. You can throw it ....

a) up b) out c) away d) into

2. Everyone is happy so .... laughing.

a) she's b) they're c) he's d) it's

3. Your tasks will .... keeping vocabulary and understanding language.

a) include b) contain c) consist d) invite

4. Thanks .... coming to my party today.

a) for b) to c) with d) on

5. We should take more care of our .... buildings.

a) historical b) historic c) historian d) history

Skills Corner

1- Reading Corner

1) How many people has the Decent Life Initiative made a difference to ?

- About 32 million people.

2) Why do you think the Decert Life Initiative is important ?

- ....

3) What does the pronoun "It" in the last paragraph refer to ?

- ....

---

1) How could David help Mrs Micawber ?

- He sold some of their old books and furniture and gave her the money.

2) What do you think of David's life with the Micawbers ?

- ....

3) Give a suitable title to the passage. - ....

---

1) Where is the writer sending the message to ?

- To a community network page.

2) Why do you think they painted the building ?

- ....

3) What is the main idea of the passage ?

- ....

---

2) Writing Corner :-

A. Read the sentences

" The Decent Life Initiative "

1. The Decent Life Initiative is really making a different to about 32 million people in villages.
2. Since 2019 the Decent Life Initiative has helped people in 377 villages to have clean water.
3. It has helped to repair their houses.
4. It has also sent doctors to the villages to deliver medicine and help ill people.

B) Write a short article : **Model short Article** نموذج مقال قصير

Write a short article of 110 words for a website about how you could be a community hero.

" How you could be a community hero "

My name is Ahmad Muhamed. I am 15 years old. There is a serious community problem which I want to solve. This problem is related to متعلقة بـ the school. A lot of students do not like the time they spent at school. In this short article, I'm going to discuss the reasons and the solutions of this problem.

Students do not like school because they feel bored and exhausted. They move from one subject to another. They are taught in traditional ways. They do not have the chance to develop their talents. They are only listeners. To solve this problem, we need to adopt new learning strategies. We must plan how to make learning useful and enjoyable at the same time. Students need to be positive and show their abilities through different activities. To conclude, learning at school must be interesting. All students must feel that they are part of the system, not only listeners.

C) Read the sentences

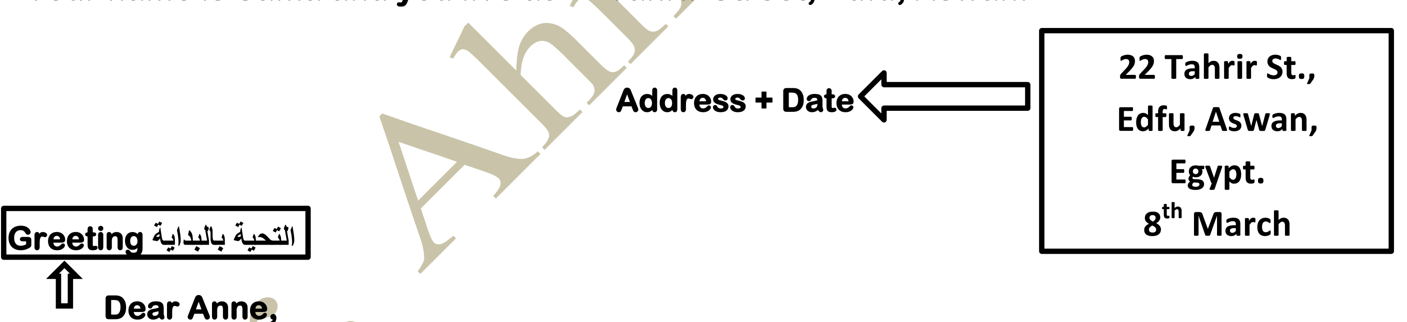
" Community matters " قضايا مجتمعية

1. Helping an elderly neighbour is an act of kindness.
2. You can help your local community by planting some trees along the streets.
3. Donating food to people who don't have enough is great work.

D) Writing a friendly letter : نموذج كتابة خطاب ودى

" Model for friendly letter " نموذج للخطاب الودى

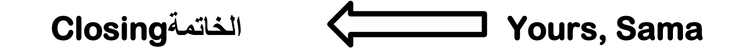
- Write a letter of about 110 words to your British friend Anne inviting her to visit Egypt. Tell her about the tourist attractions she will enjoy in Egypt.
- Your name is Sama and you live at 22 Tahrir Street, Edfu, Aswan.



Dear Anne,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are happy and in good health. I write this letter to invite you to visit me here in Egypt. I'm sure you will enjoy every minute you will spend with us.

The weather in Egypt is wonderful. It is sunny and warm. You can visit a lot of tourist attractions. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian Museum. In Giza, you can visit the Pyramids and the zoo. If you visit Aswan, you will enjoy visiting Abu Simbel Temples, the High Dam and the Plants' Island. In Luxor, you will visit El-Karnak Temple and the Valley of the Kings. I hope you will accept my invitation. I'm looking forward to your reply.



E) Read the sentences :-

"Social network services page"صفحة خدمة التواصل الإجتماعى

1. The library needs painting. We want to encourage children to use the library again.

2. At our community meeting, we decided to improve the building.

3. We got some ideas from the Mashrouh El Saada Community.

Write a paragraph or an *Email on* :

The Decent Life Initiative / *A community project* / Sports facilities in your town / Community matters/ problems.

Write a letter of about (110) words to your friend Adam telling him **about how we can communicate with other people in our community.**

- Your name is Omar and you live at 155 Talat Harab, Downtown, Cairo.

---

2) Speaking

A community Survey : دراسة إستطلاعية مجتمعية

1. What things could people do to make a different to poor people in your community ?	- People in the local community could do many things : they can donate food, clothing, old furniture...,etc.
2. How could they do this ?	- They could start local charities to help people and make poster's to encourage them to do good things.
3. What do you think are the best things about your own community ?	- I like the sports facilities. Also, I like our streets which are safer than before.
4. Are there any facilities for the elderly and disabled people ?	- Yes, there are many facilities made especially for them.
5. Are people doing anything to improve the facilities ? What ?	- Yes. They keep them clean.

Communicating in the community : التواصل فى المجتمع :

Question ?	Answers
1. Do you communicate with other people in your community ?	- Yes, I do.
2. Which form of communication could you use ?	- Social network service.

Talking about community problems : **للحديث عن المشكلات المجتمعية :**

Question ?	Answers
1. What are the problems in your community?	- Graffiti on the walls of the historic buildings and not enough leisure activities for young people.
2. What are you going to do to improve the situation ?	- I'm going to clean the graffiti off the walls and start a new sports club.
3. How are you going to encourage people to help you do this ?	- I'm going to make posters and write a post on social network service page.

Using formal and informal greetings : **إستخدام التحيات فى اللغة الرسمية وغير الرسمية :**

Formal Language لغة رسمية	Informal Language لغة غير رسمية
1. Hello.	- Hi / Hey.
2. How are you ?	- How is it going ?
3. Pleased to meet you.	- Nice to meet you.
4. I'd like to introduce myself.	- How is your day ?
5. Goodbye.	- See you later.
6. I'd like to meet إسم الصديق / إسم الصديق ، أود أن تقابل	- Bye.
	- This is إسم الصديق.

Speaking skills

Question ?	Answers
1. Which people can make a difference in your community ?	- Young people can make a different in our community.
2. What is the best way to communicate with other people in your community ?	- The best way is using social network services.

Brainstorming **مجموعة أسئلة لإستثارة افكار لكتابة الفقرة الإنشائية / رسالة البريد الإلكترونى**

- What services can you give to your community ?

- How can we encourage young people to do sports ?

- What are the community problems you want to solve ?

2. Language قواعد لغوية هامة قد تكون موضع إختبار :

1. They **are starting** to paint the walls. مضارع مستمر يُعبر عن ترتيبات فى المستقبل.

2. Ghada **is going to visit** her aunt next week. مستقبل قريب (خطط) فى المستقبل بإستخدام **(going to)**

3. I'm **interested** in music. صفة تنتهى بـ **(-ed)** تصف المشاعر

4. This story is **exciting**. صفة تنتهى بـ **(- ing)** تصف اشياء

Expressions & Structures تعبيرات وتراكيب لغوية

- I felt ………… when I came first.

- We are ………………… to play football in the evening.

- We encouraged people to throw …………….. their rubbish.

- I'm very proud of ………… .

Main Vocabulary

- community	- proud of
- local shops	- kindness
- good transport	- volunteers
- opportunities	- posters
- encourage	- charity
- neighbourhood	- message of thanks
- handball	- facilities
- deliver	- sports activities
- transport	- greet
- graffiti	- disappointed

Mini- Test on Unit (3)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Young people can practise many ………….. at sports centres.

a) recipes b) sports activities c) pavements d) shops

2. ……………. people are those who can't walk and use wheelchairs.

a) Deaf b) Disabled c) Blind d) Story

3. Many shops nowadays can …………… their products to customers.

a) prepare b) damage c) deliver d) discover

4. My father always ………….. me to do sports.

a) delivers b) encourages c) coughs d) laughs

5. Walking or running regularly ………… a great difference to your health.

a) makes b) takes c) puts d) gives

6. My plan is to have a trip next Sunday. I ……………… to Luxor.

a) am travelling b) 'm going to travel c) travel d) will travel

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- The children are very ....(exciting) as they have a new toy.

2- Heba is ....(interesting) in reading adventure stories.

3- They ....(will) to visit their aunt next Friday.

4- When are you ....(go) to revise for the exam ?

---

3) Write an email of about (110) words :-

" to your friend Yassir about what you are going to do next week. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is yassir@gmail.com."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit (4) Have you ever travelled by plane ?

Lessons (1&2)

snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس تحت الماء بإستخدام أنبوب تنفس	competition (n)	مسابقة – منافسة
experience (n)	خبرة – تجربة حياتية	orphanage (n)	دار الأيتام
marriage (n)	زواج	Chinese food (n)	طعام صينى
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	beach restaurant (n)	مطعم داخل شاطئ
adventure (n)	مغامرة	graph (n)	رسم بيانى
tent (n)	خيمة	half (n)	نص (١/٢)
camel (n)	جمل	wedding party (n)	حفل زفاف
list (n)	قائمة أشياء	move (d) (v)	ينتقل – ينقل
period (n)	مدة – حقبة	headache (n)	صداع (آلم بالرأس)
point (n)	نقطة / حدد	flat (n)	شقة
history (n)	تاريخ		

Lessons (3&4)

grandparents (n)	الأجداد	canoe (n)	زورق طويل ضيق
dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم – حلم	deaf (adj)	أصم (لا يسمع)
awake (adj)	مستيقظ	follow (ed) (v)	يتتبع
care (d) about (v)	يعتنى بـ - يهتم بـ	countryside (n)	الريف
raft (n)	قارب بدائى – طوافة – عوامة	hard of hearing (adj)	ضعيف السمع / ثقيل السمع
join (ed)	ينضم إلى	change (d) (v), (n)	يتغير - يُغير / تغيير
sports club (n)	نادى رياضى	sign language (n)	لغة الإشارة
fun (n)	متعة	special school (n)	مدرسة خاصة
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
instrument (n)	آلة موسيقية	Cairo Opera House	دار الأوبرا المصرية
Athens (n)	أثينا (عاصمة اليونان قديماً)	fun novels (n)	روايات فكاهية / مُضحكة
scare (d) (v)	يُخيف	sequel (n)	تتمة – تكملة
fog (n)	ضباب	teenage boys (n)	أولاد فى سن المراهقة
forest (n)	غابة	similarities (n)	أوجه التشابه
fun game (n)	لعبة مرح – مُتعة	wood (n)	خشب
foggy (adj)	ضبابى – غير واضح	float (ed) (v)	يطفو
terrible (adj)	فظيع – مريع	environment (n)	البيئة
return (ed) (v)	يعود		

Lessons (5&6)

discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف	theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهى
dyslexia (n)	صعوبة القراءة	gymnastics (n)	ألعاب رياضية – جمباز
results (n)	نتائج	volunteer (ed) (v),(n)	يتطوع – متطوع
normally (adv)	بطريقة طبيعية	windy (adj)	عاصف
train (ed) (v)	يتدرب – يُدرب	organise (d)	يُنظم – يُرتب
introduce (d) (v)	يُقدم	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	windsurf (ed) (v)	يتزلج على الماء (مستخدماً المركب الشراعى)
explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح	alone (adv)	بمفرده
achieve (d) (v)	يُحقق / يُنجز	surprised (adj)	مندهش – متفاجئ
decide (d) (v)	يُقرر	prize (n)	جائزة
brain (n)	مخ	art (n)	فن
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	artist (n)	فنان – رسام
timeline (n)	خط زمنى – تسلسل زمنى	Manchester (n)	مانشستر (إسم مدينة بإنجلترا)
Indian food (n)	الطعام الهندى	Greece (n)	دولة اليونان
swimming lessons (n)	دروس سباحة		

Conjugation of Irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride يركب	rode	ridden
do / does يفعل	did	done
read يقرأ	read	read
win يفوز	won	won
swim يسبح	swam	swum
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten
drink يشرب	drank	drunk
let يسمح	let	let
hide يُخفى / يختفى	hid	hidden
steal يسرق	stole	stolen
say يقول	said	said
hurt يؤذى / يجرح	hurt	hurt
understand يفهم	understood	understood
write يكتب	wrote	written
spell يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
tell يُخبر / يقول	told	told

Study these definitions

experience	something that happens in your life

awake	not sleeping
canoe	a long, narrow boat for one or two people
care about	feel strongly about someone or something
dream	pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping
follow	walk or drive behind someone
raft	pieces of wood that are put together so they can float on water
dyslexia	means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell
discover	to find out some new information about something
result	this tells you how you have done in an exam.

Important Expressions & Prepositions

swim in a pool	يسبح فى حمام السباحة	get married	يتزوج
do the housework	يقوم بأداء أعمال المنزل	It's important to + (inf.)	إنه من المهم أن ...
make the food for	يُعد الطعام لـ ...	move to	ينتقل إلى
make a kite	يصنع طائرة ورقية	more than 20 years	أكثر من ٢٠ عاماً
travel by plane	يسافر بالطائرة	the longest marriage	أطول فترة زواج
ride a horse	يركب حصان	about an hour	حوالى ساعة
snorkel in the sea	يغطس فى البحر (بأنبوب التنفس)	on business	فى (رحلة) عمل
try Chinese food	يُجرب طعام صينى	finish on time	ينتهى فى الوقت المحدد
sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة	at the bank	فى البنك
about half the people in the class	حوالى نصف الأشخاص فى الفصل / الطلاب	travelling by air	السفر جواً
have a headache	لديه صداع	for a point in time	لنقطة زمنية
make a cake	يصنع كيك (تورته)	for a period of time	لمدة من الزمن
write a list of	يكتب قائمة لـ	go to a farm	يذهب إلى مزرعة
arrive on time	يصل فى الوقت المحدد	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل
drink a cup of coffee	يشرب فنجان من القهوة	play a musical instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
interested in	مهتم بـ	use sign language	يستخدم لغة الإشارة
all my life	طوال حياتى	badly hurt	مًصاب بشدة
a special school for deaf children	مدرسة خاصة للأطفال الصُم	had a terrible night	قضيت ليلة مُريعة
at a local school	فى مدرسة محلية	say sorry to	يتأسف لـ ...
win a match	يفوز بمباراة	feel strongly about	يشعر بقوة تجاه
learn a language	يتعلم لغة	go down the river	ينزل النهر
do a sport	يمارس رياضة	join a sports club	ينضم إلى نادى رياضى
have a problem with	لديه مشكله فى	far from	بعيداً عن
tell .... about ...	يُخبر ... عن ..	take him back to	يرجع إلى
It's difficult for (Sb) to (inf.)	إنه من الصعب على .. أن	tell a story	يسرد / يحكى قصة
teach ... about ...	يُعلم .. عن ...	give a talk	يلقى خطبة / حديث

achieve in his life	يحقق فى حياته	start swimming lessons	يبدأ دروس السباحة
		plat the piano	يعزف على البيانو

Vocabulary Study :- Synonyms and Antonyms المترادفات والمتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym (المرادف لها (نفس المعنى	Antonym / opposite المضاد للكلمة
fewer أقل (عدداً)	smaller	more أكثر (عدداً)
important هام	essential – serious	unimportant غير هام
longest الأطول	tallest	shortest الأقصر
different مختلف	unlike	the same نفس الشئ
special خاص – مميز	important – unusual	usual – ordinary مألوف – عادى
local محلى	native – national	international عالى / دولى
die يموت	pass away	live يعيش – يحيا
brave شجاع	fearless – daring	coward – afraid جبان – خائف
clever ماهر – ذكى	smart – intelligent	stupid غبى
naughty مشاغب – مزعج	bad – noisy	quiet هادئ
successful ناجح	lucky – winner	unsuccessful غير ناجح
dangerous خطير	serious – unsafe	safe آمن
true حقيقى – صحيح	correct – accurate	false – inaccurate خطأ / غير دقيق
difficult صعب	hard	easy سهل
teach يُعلم – يُدرس	educate	learn يتعلم
huge ضخم	enormous – giant	tiny ضئيل الحجم
nearby قريب	near – close to	distant – remote – faraway بعيد – ناءٍ

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The antonym of the word " different " is the ....
   a) difficult b) similar c) easy d) same
2. Hania is the shortest girl, but Mai is the ....
   a) short b) taller c) tallest d) taller
3. The suffix "............" means pain in your body.
   a) –ese b) –ache c) –er d) –ed
4. We add "ese" to China to make it a/an ....
   a) verb b) adverb c) adjective d) pronoun
5. When something is .... , it is unusual.
   a) happy b) noisy c) sudden d) special
6. When something is serious, that means it is not ....
   a) safe b) dangerous c) brave d) bad
7. The opposite of "live" is ....
   a) die b) lie c) tie d) try
8. A/An .... person isn't stupid.
   a) interesting b) clever c) difficult d) slow
9. The dinosaur was a huge animal. The antonym of "huge" is ....
   a) enormous b) bad c) tiny d) easy

10. When you make a noise, you are ....

a) tiny b) dirty c) noisy d) ugly

11. "Educate" has the same meaning as "................ ".

a) teach b) learn c) give d) discuss

12. The suffix .... turns the verb swam into a noun.

a) –ed b) –ing c) –ment d) -tion

General notes on Reading & Listening

1) wait for – wait to

*** wait for** ينتظر (شخص – أتوبيس – قطار ...)

ex. - I'm **waiting for** the six o'clock train.

- I **waited for** you, but you were late.

*** wait to + (inf.)** ينتظر (يتبعها مصدر الفعل)

ex. - I've been **waiting to** know who won the match.

---

2) since تستخدم بمعنى (منذ) ويتبعها (بداية مدة) أو جملة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

ex. - (**WB**) We've been in Cairo **since** you were born.

- I've waited for the bus **since** six o'clock.

ex. - Wafaa got sick **since** she'd eaten badly cooked food. **because** بمعنى **(since)** ويمكن إستخدام

---

3) experience / experiences

*** experience** خبرة (إسم لا يُعد)

ex. - Mr. Ahmad has years of **experience** in teaching English.

*** (an) experience ------ experiences** تجربة (حياتية) (إسم يُعد)

ex. - Seeing a lion out of its cage was **an experience** I can't forget.

- I've passed many bad **experiences** in my life.

---

1) concert – concrete

*** concert** حفلة موسيقية

ex. - Omar Khairat always gives regular **concerts**. He is a great musician.

*** concrete** خرسانة

ex. - Modern houses are made of **concrete** and bricks.

---

2) Special school – Private school

*** special school** مدرسة خاصة (تُقدم نوعية معينة من التعليم)

ex. - The government is building **special schools** for the disabled.

*** private school** مدرسة خاصة (ليست ملكاً للحكومة)

ex. - My grandchildren go to a **private school**. It costs my son a lot of money.

3) let – allow (ed) يسمح – يدع

let + مفعول + inf. المصدر

ex. - Please, **let** me **go** into the club.

allow (ed) + مفعول + to + inf. المصدر

ex. - Please, **allow** me **to go** into the club.

---

1) enjoy + (inf. + ing) / noun إسم يتمتع بـ

ex. - I enjoy windsurfing with my uncle.

- We enjoyed the concert of Oum Kulthoum at the Citadel.

2) learn to + inf. يتعلم أن

ex. - I could **learn to** swim.

ex. - I could **learn how to** swim. لاحظ : يمكن إستخدام **how** بعد **learn**

<u>1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-</u>

1. In summer, I really enjoy .... in the sea.
   a) winning b) snorkeling c) hiding d) flying
2. My wife and I have lived in that flat since our ....
   a) death b) university c) birth d) marriage
3. A/An .... is a home for children whose parents are dead.
   a) marriage b) orphanage c) airport d) aquarium
4. My daughter is good at painting. She always wins art ....
   a) inventions b) competitions c) invitations d) situations
5. Today, all students in my class are talking about their ....
   a) respect b) expects c) experiences d) experts
6. (SB) Fady has had a/an ....for about an hour. His head still hurts.
   a) headache b) stomachache c) nosebleed d) earache
7. (SB) Most people in the class have never .... by plane.
   a) known b) drawn c) travelled d) thrown
8. (WB) Have they .... the food for the wedding party ?
   a) won b) written c) made d) drunk
9. Adel was excited. He had a lot of .... in the Red Sea coast.
   a) meals b) discussions c) problems d) adventures
10. When I was at the Pyramids, I saw many tourists riding ....
   a) taxis b) cars c) camels d) planes
11. I slept in a .... when I was in Siwa Oasis.
   a) tank b) tent c) box d) cabin
12. Heba was absent from school for a .... of time.
   a) period b) sign c) point d) stop
13. She is going to .... married in spring.
   a) get b) fly c) do d) stay
14. I'm waiting for the train for .... half an hour.
   a) till b) from c) about d) until
15. It's important .... healthy.
   a) stay b) to stay c) stays d) staying
16. Who are you waiting .... ?
   a) in b) for c) to d) out

1. Has she .... ridden a horse ? - Yes, she has.
a) just b) never c) ever d) yet

2. My sister has been good at tennis .... she was ten.
a) for b) since c) when d) just

3. Adam has .... eaten Chinese food.
a) lately b) yet c) ever d) never

4. I love chess, so I .... a chess club in my village.
a) joined b) has joined c) have joined d) joining

5. We've lived here .... ten years.
a) for b) since c) ago d) just

6. (SB) I haven't .... Chinese food.
a) eat b) ate c) eaten d) eats

7. (SB) Have you ever ....to a football match ?
a) been b) to be c) being d) be

8. (SB) Hania .... played tennis many times.
a) have b) to have c) having d) has

9. (WB) How long have you .... in this house ?
a) lived b) live c) lives d) living

10. (WB) We've been married .... more than fifty years !
a) since b) for c) yet d) never

11. She hasn't seen her father .... she was a child.
a) ever b) since c) for d) yet

12. Khalid has .... his friend Tamer for a long time.
a) known b) knowing c) knows d) know

13. Mohamed and Sara .... been married since last year.
a) has b) to have c) have d) having

14. Has Salma .... ridden a horse ? - Yes, she has.
a) never b) for c) ever d) since

15. They have .... visited the Egyptian Museum before.
a) ever b) never c) ever d) since

16. They haven't .... any money.
a) get b) gets c) getting d) got

17. Has Ali found his lost bag ? -No, he ....
a) has b) haven't c) hasn't d) have

18. The word "many" in the passage is opposite of ....
a) few b) more c) much d) enough

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- (SB) Has Lina ever .... (see) that film ?

2- (WB) Twelve people .... (has) ridden a camel.

3- (WB) I've lived in the same house .... (for) I was born.

4- He hasn't .... (reading) that book before.

5- Mai has watched TV .... (since) two hours.

6- Mr. Tamer has been at this school ....(for) 2001.

7- Hassan has .... (have) a headache for 3 hours.

8- Have you .... (never) visited the zoo ?

9- No, Salwa has ....(ever) travelled by plane.

10- They have ....(buying) a new house.

Read and complete :-

(have – ever – long – has – been – for)

1- How .... have you practiced football ?

2- They have .... married since 1990.

3- Has she .... flown a kite ?

4- Adel .... been at this school for 5 years.

5- The boys .... got many pens.

General Exercises on Lessons 1&2

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Marwan is phoning his friend, Tamer who's getting ready to travel to London.

Marawan : Hi, Tamer. How are you ?

Tamer : (1) ...., and you ?

Marawan : (2) ....

Tamer : (3) ....?

Marawan : I'm getting ready to fly to London.

Tamer : London ! Why will you travel there ?

Marawan : (4) ....

Tamer : Your cousins! (5) ....?

Marawan : I'll stay there for a week.

Tamer : Great ! A week is enough to see London, too.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :-

1. I haven't .... a horse before.

a) climbed b) moved c) ridden d) flown

2. Have you ever .... in the sea ?

a) flown b) snorkelled c) slept d) ridden

3. (WB) Has anyone in your family ....a mountain ?

a) got b) climbed c) ridden d) moved

4. My friend asks me if I have .... in a tent before.

a) slept b) moved c) ridden d) flown

5. I .... a terrible headache.

a) have b) make c) do d) enjoy

6. (WB) I have never .... Chinese food. I might try it next time.

a) ridden b) snorkelled c) tried d) been

7. (WB) My parents .... married in 2001.

a) gave b) got c) did d) found

8. Hatem .... in this company since 2005.

a) works b) is working c) have worked d) has worked

9. .... a novel by Charles Dickens ?

a) Have you ever read b) Have you read ever

c) Have read ever you d) Have ever your read

10. (WB) My family has been in Cairo .... I was ten.

a) ever b) never c) for d) since

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Shadi has walked .... (since) two hours.

2- Adel has .... (never eat) Chinese food.

3- (WB) Have you ever ....(make) a cake ?

4- (WB) Has he finished on time ? - Yes, he .... (hasn't)

(4) (SB) Complete the sentences with these words :

(eaten – ridden – tent – rode – travelled)

I asked the people in my class about their experiences. Most people in the class have (1) .... Chinese food. Not many people have (2) .... a horse or slept in a (3) .... Even fewer people have snorkelled. Most people in the class have never (4) .... by plane.

4- Choose the correct word :

1- Have you ever try / tried Chinese food ?

2- (WB) I have drank / drunk two cups of coffee.

6- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Your experiences "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Exercises on Lessons (3/4)

1. The .... use sign language to communicate with others.
   a) disabled b) blind c) young d) deaf
2. Your .... are your grandfather and grandmother.
   a) granddaughters b) grandsons c) grandparents d) grandchildren
3. When we were on holiday, we went down a river in a .... It was great fun !
   a) camel b) candle c) canoe d) can
4. To .... is to walk or drive behind someone.
   a) feel b) file c) follow d) fail
5. (WB) The hotel room was very noisy, so I was .... all night !
   a) happy b) comfortable c) awake d) strange
6. (WB) Last night, I had a strange .... I thought I was flying.
   a) game b) toy c) dream d) decision
7. (WB) Like many young people, Azza and her brothers really .... about the environment.
   a) hurry b) cry c) care d) carry
8. To .... this sports club, you have to fill in this form.
   a) destroy b) join c) call d) believe
9. I couldn't see anything on the road because it was ....
   a) angry b) fresh c) clear d) foggy
10. The huge dog .... me yesterday, I was terrified.
    a) carried b) scared c) cried d) played
11. Care about means to .... strongly about someone or something.
    a) deal b) eat c) feel d) hit
12. Most of my friends studied .... a local school.
    a) at b) in c) into d) onto
13. I saw my friend going .... the river.
    a) at b) in c) down d) into
14. Yesterday, I........ a terrible night because there was a fire on the factory next to me house.
    a) gave b) felt c) had d) took
15. Mr. Ahmad works at a .... school for blind children.
    a) general b) lonely c) private d) special

---

1. When something is .... , it is usual.
   a) happy b) noisy c) sudden d) special
2. When something is serious, that means it is not ....
   a) safe b) dangerous c) brave d) bad
3. The opposite of "live" is ....
   a) die b) lie c) tie d) try

4. A/An .... person isn't stupid.
a) interesting b) clever c) difficult d) slow

5. My mum and dad .... in that house since 2004.
a) has lived b) have lived c) lived d) live

6. Tarek has .... handball for ten years.
a) play b) plays c) played d) playing

7. Mai .... England last week.
a) visits b) visited c) has visited d) visiting

8. When I was a baby, my parents .... to Egypt.
a) moved b) moves c) moving d) are moving

9. (SB) We moved to the city three years ....
a) ago b) yesterday c) last d) for

10. (WB) My parents .... married in 2001.
a) gets b) get c) getting d) got

11. (SB) We haven't visited Syria since I .... very young.
a) am b) was c) is d) are

12. (SB) Have you ever .... to a new place ?
a) moved b) moves c) move d) moving

13. Last week, she .... to the park with her sister.
a) goes b) go c) went d) gone

14. They found their car near their house ....
a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) for d) since

15. Samy was born in Tanta and .... there with his brother.
a) live b) lives c) lived d) living

16. She has written stories .... she was twelve.
a) for b) since c) ever d) never

17. What .... Ahmed buy last week ?
a) do b) does c) doing d) did

18. How long .... you been in Aswan ? - For a year.
a) has b) having c) have d) to have

---

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. (SB) My name is Salma. I ....(be) born in Syria.

2. (WB) Has Dalia ....(be) deaf all of her life ?

3. (SB) Two years ago, I .... (play) at a concert in the Cairo Opera House.

4. (WB) Magda ....(visits) England last week.

5. My sister ....(go) shopping last month.

6. She .... (have) phoned her father for an hour.

7. They have never ....(teat) Italian food.

8. How did they .... (wrote) the answers ?

9. She has talked to her friend ....(since) two hours.

10. Has Hoda ....(never) travelled to London ?

(4) Complete the sentences with these words :

(been – bought – for – since – born - Yesterday)

1- He was .... in Cairo in 1988.

2- She has .... three dresses.

3- ...., she watched a nice film.

4- How long have you .... in Alexandria ?

5- I haven't seen my aunt .... I was a child.

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" An adventure story "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

---

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Adel is talking to his cousin about an adventure that he had.

Adel : Hello, Said. I want to tell you about my adventure.

Said : Hello, Adel. (1) ....?

Adel : I chased a thief !

Said : A thief ! When did that happen ?

Adel : (2) ....

Said : Two hours ago ! (3) ....?

Adel : In front of the club.

Said : Who did he rob ?

Adel : (4) ....

Said : Poor woman ! Was he arrested ?

Adel : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. To stop the animals from damaging your field, you should have a long ....

a) leader b) fan c) fence d) ladder

2. The .... man saved the woman from the robbers.

a) brave b) weak c) ill d) bored

3. If you like music, try to play a musical ....

a) accident b) machine c) tool d) instrument

4. She was happy when she .... the last match.

a) made b) won c) earned d) lost

5. Hala learnt .... language to help her deaf daughter.

a) foreign b) strange c) sign d) signal

6. He was lost, so I asked him to .... me.

a) meet b) follow c) walk d) research

7. (WB) The pictures and sounds that you think are happening when you are sleeping are called a/an ....

a) raft b) canoe c) idea d) dream

8. Have you .... tasted a lemon cake ?

a) never b) ever c) since d) for

9. This is the first time I visit Luxor. I have .... visited Luxor before.

a) for b) ever c) since d) never

10. (WB) They have been married .... fifteen years.

a) since b) for c) ever d) never

---

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Soha ....(live) in Mansura since 2015.

2- My uncle .... (have already) flown in a plane.

3- (SB) Have you ever ....(drink) green tea ?

4- (WB) I have ....(never win) a painting competition.

---

(4)(SB) Complete the sentences with these words :

(museums – fun – history – country – art)

I have lived in a village in the south of Egypt all my life. I have never been to another (1) ...., but last year I visited Cairo with my uncle and my cousins! It was so big and busy but it was (2) .... We went to lots of (3) .... because I was very interested in (4) ....

5) Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Omar who lives in Aswan about a day you spent at the Pyramids.

- Your name is Adel and your email address is adelamr@yahoo.com.

- Your friend's email address is omarhamed@gmail.com.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Exercises on Vocabulary lessons 5&6

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. To .... means to find out some new information about something.

a) invent b) discover c) invest d) invite

2. You must study if you want to get excellent ....

a) reasons b) causes c) results d) faces

3. If you have .... , then you have difficulty in reading and spelling.

a) headache b) cold c) dyslexia d) flu

4. Dream Park is one of the biggest .... parks in the Arab World.

a) animal b) theme c) comic d) dangerous

5. We take a .... lesson once a week to make our body strong.

a) gymnastics b) science c) maths d) history

6. (WB) My grandfather has .... many things in his life. I'm very proud of him.

a) achieved b) lived c) taken d) played

7. (WB) Dareen's little brother is often .... He hides her clothes, so she can't find them!

a) clever b) quiet c) naughty d) messy

8. (WB) It was windy, but that is good if you want to ....

a) windsurf b) achieve c) spell d) listen

9. (SB) I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be a/an ....one day.

a) engineer b) artist c) doctor d) dentist

10. .... is an exciting water sport.

a) Windsurfing b) Basketball c) Skateboarding d) Tennis

11. Now, I .... at a charity for children with dyslexia.

a) volunteer b) discover c) like d) understand

12. I write the important events of my life on my ....

a) result b) achievement c) timeline d) charity

13. We've enjoyed .... music on our new piano.

a) play b) plays c) to play d) playing

14. Ayman learned .... to make his bed alone.

a) what b) when c) how d) why

15. Tom .... a problem in reading.

a) has b) plays c) cooks d) builds

16. My school is far ....my house.

a) by b) from c) of d) to

1. Read and complete :

(be – was – for – prize – art – good)

1- I got really .... results.

2- I .... surprised and happy.

3- I got a .... for my art.

4- I would like to .... an artist one day.

5- Now, I teach .... at a charity.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Ayman is talking with his friend, Hamza about their favourite hobbies.

Ayman : How are you, Hamza ?

Hamza : Fine, thank you. What do you do in your spare time ?

Ayman : (1) ……………………………………………………………… .

Hamza : Reading is really useful.(2) …………………………………………………?

Ayman : I like reading scientific books. (3) ……………………………………………?

Hamza : I usually do a sport.

Ayman : What kind of sport do you do ?

Hamza : (4) ……………………………………………………………… .

Ayman : Karate is good, but dangerous. Why don't you play football ?

Hamza : (5) ……………………………………………………………… .

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. (WB) Hatem ……………… to help the elderly in the nearby charity home.
   a) damaged b) volunteered c) complete d) achieved
2. To keep fit, you should ………… a sport.
   a) own b) take c) make d) do
3. She ……………… more than seven hours a day to prepare for the Olympics.
   a) feeds b) does c) trains d) makes
4. We haven't ……………… the reason for his absence yet.
   a) discovered b) arrested c) visited d) explored
5. Waleed suffers from ………….. . He finds difficulties in reading.
   a) disability b) dyslexia c) headache d) deafness
6. I'm proud of my father. He ………….. many things in his life.
   a) joined b) offered c) given d) achieved
7. (SB) I volunteer at a/an …………… for other children with dyslexia.
   a) charity b) bank c) theme park d) theatre
8. They moved to Port Said …………….. 2018.
   a) on b) since c) for d) in
9. Hadi has lived in Alexandria ……………. 10 years.
   a) never b) ever c) for d) since
10. (WB) How long ………………. in this house ?
    a) they have lived b) have lived they c) have they lived d) lived they have

(3) (SB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(paint – understand – easy – difficult – life)

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my (1) .... When I was little, I always loved to draw and (2) ...., but I found reading and writing very (3) .... At school, I didn't always (4) .... the lessons and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

---

(4) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

"Things that you have achieved"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Unit (4)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Nabil saw Amr running in the street.

Nabil : Hi, Amr. Why are you running ?

Amr : Hello, Nabil. (1) ....

Nabil : A hospital ! (2) .... ?

Amr : My brother broke his leg.

Nabil : Oh, dear (3) ....?

Amr : He was playing football in the club and fell over. He could stand on his leg.

Nabil : Who took him to hospital ?

Amr : (4) ....

Nabil : Can I come with you ?

Amr : (5) .... That's kind of you.

---

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :-

I was born in Cairo and I have lived there all my life. When I was little, I always loved to draw and paint, but I found reading and writing very difficult. At school, I didn't always understand the work and it was really hard. I thought I wasn't very clever.

Then my parents and the school decided to take me for some tests. They discovered that I had dyslexia. <u>This</u> means it is difficult for my brain to read and spell. After that, I got more help and I started to understand more.

When I took my exams, I got really good results ! I was surprised and happy. Later, I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day. Now, I volunteer at a charity for other children with dyslexia and teach them about art.

1- Explain why the writer's family took him to have some tests. Mention two points.

....

....

2- Infer the characteristics of a child who has dyslexia. Mention two.

....

....

3- Do you think that students having dyslexia can get good results ? Why and how ?

....

....

4- The passage is about ....

a) the writer himself　b) the writer's family　c) Cairo　d) dyslexia

5- People with dyslexia need ....

a) to have more money　b) to do sport

c) to have more help　d) to learn art

6- The underlined word "<u>This</u>" refers to ....

a) result　b) exam　c) school　d) dyslexia

<u>3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-</u>

1. Have you ever .... Italian food ?

a) learned　b) eaten　c) ridden　d) flown

2. I have never slept .... a tent before.

a) in　b) on　c) off　d) for

3. They have .... to this house since 2010.

a) enjoyed　b) ridden　c) flown　d) moved

4. Some people's hobby is to .... mountains, have you ever done it ?

a) climb　b) escape　c) bring　d) fly

5. A new .... school for deaf children will be built in our neighbourhood.

a) common　b) general　c) special　d) private

6. While I was walking .... the street, I met my friend.

a) out　b) down　c) up　d) off

7. (SB) A/An .... is something that happens in your life.

a) decision　b) report　c) experience　d) experiment

8. This is the most interesting story I have .... read.

a) never　b) since　c) for　d) ever

9. Sohaila has .... made a cake before.

a) never　b) ever　c) for　d) since

10. (WB) I've lived in the same house .... I was born.

a) ever　b) never　c) for　d) since

<u>4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-</u>

1- Have you .... (ever ride) a horse ?

2- How long .... (you have be) in Assuit ?

3- (WB) She .... (stay) in Damietta since 2017.

4- (WB) I have never ……………………(swim) in a lake.

5) (WB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(bathroom – house – for – lived – moved)

Different families have lived in our (1) ……………….. for over 200 years. I have lived here with my family since 2016. Before that, we (2) ……………….. in Cairo. My parents changed some of the house when we (3) …………………. here. For example, my mum wanted a new (4) …………………. !

6) Choose the correct word :-

1- (SB) Mr. Sabri has been at this school **since / for** 2020.

2- (SB) To **discover / join** is to become part of a club.

7) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

"A happy event that happened to you recently"

……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………

1. Mini-Test on unit 4 for Al-Azhar students :

1) Read and match :-

1. Where is it best to snorkel in Egypt ?	a. ( ) since they were children.
2. Malak has been friends with Injy	b. ( ) slightly, or to a small degree.
3. My sister has learnt two new languages	c. ( ) married in 1999.
4. "A bit" means	d. ( ) since she left school.
5. My parents got	e. ( ) Sharm El-Sheikh.
	f. ( ) deaf all of her life ?

2) Read and correct the underlined words :-

1. Tarek has **play** handball for ten years. (........................)
2. How long have you **knew** your best friend ? (........................)
3. Have you **never** visited Athens ? (........................)
4. We waited **to** the bus for two hours. (........................)

---

2) Use your brain, think smart :-

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. My dad has passed .... bad experiences in all of his life.
   a) lots   b) much   c) many   d) little
2. "Ali became part of Liverpool team". This means he .... Liverpool team.
   a) followed   b) joined   c) tricked   d) hid
3. Please, let me .... you some advice about how to learn a new language.
   a) gives   b) to give   c) give   d) giving
4. Please, allow me .... snorkeling in Hurghada.
   a) going   b) goes   c) going to   d) to go
5. Which sentence is correct ? ....
   a) I live in Alexandria in 2000.   b) I lived in Alexandria in 2000.
   c) I have lived in Alexandria in 2000.   d) I will live in Alexandria in 2000.

Skills Corner

1- Reading Corner

1. Why do you think fewer students have snorkelled ?

    - Maybe because it's not their favourite activity.

2. Who has travelled by plane three times ? ....

3. The word "many" in the passage is the opposite of ....

    a) few   b) more   c) much   d) enough

2. Writing Corner :

A) Read the sentences :

1- There are many things I've done.

2- I have snorkelled in the Red Sea.

3- I have been to a football match at Cairo Stadium.

4- I have slept in a tent in the desert.

Read and complete:- **(have – ever – long – has – been – for)**

1. How .... have you practised football ?
2. They have .... married since 1990.
3. Has she .... flown a kite?
4. Adel .... been at this school for 5 years.
5. The boys .... got many pens.

C) Practise writing/ Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Your favourite hobby "

....
....
....

3. Speaking Corner :-

Talking about experiences :- الحديث عن الخبرات السابقة

Question ?	Answers
1. Have your parents always lived in the same house, or have they moved ?	- Yes. They have lived in the same house.
2. How long have you lived in your house ?	- I've lived there since I was born.
3. How long have you studied English ?	- I've studied English since I was seven.
4. Has anyone in your family climbed a mountain ?	- Yes, my cousin has climbed a mountain.

5. Which people in your family have been to another country ?	- My father has been to England.

1. Reading Corner :-

1. What do you learn about Tom from the passage ?

- He never thinks of other people.

2. What was Tom doing in the forest ?

- ....

3. What does the word "her" in the first paragraph refer to ? ....

2. Writing Corner: *A) Read the sentences :*

1. I have lived in a village all my life.
2. I have never been to another country.
3. Last year, I visited Cairo with my uncle.
4. Cairo was so big and busy.
5. We went to lots of museums as I'm very interested in history.

Read and complete:- (been – bought – for – since – born - Yesterday)

1- He was .... in Cairo in 1988.

2- She has .... three dresses.

3- ...., she watched a nice film.

4- How long have you .... in Alexandria ?

5- I haven't seen my aunt .... I was a child.

C) Practise writing/ Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

"An adventure story"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

3. Speaking Corner :-

Asking and answering questions about experiences :- توجيه أسئله والرد عليها الحديث عن الخبرات السابقة

Question ?	Answers
1. A : Have you ever moved to another city ?	- B : Yes, I have.
2. A : Where did you move ?	- B : I moved to New Cairo.
3. A : When did you move ?	- B : I moved three years ago.
4. A : Have you ever learned a different language?	- B : Yes, I have.
5. A : Which languages did you learn ?	- B : I learned French.
6. A : Have you ever joined a sports club ?	- B : Yes, I have.
7. A : Which sports club did you join ?	- B : I joined Al Ahly club.
8. A : Have you ever played a musical instrument ?	- B : Yes, I have.
9. A : Which musical instrument did you play ?	- B : I played the piano.

1. Reading Corner :-

1. What lesson do you think Karim has learned ?

    - Not to windsurf alone again.

2. Why was Karim scared ? - ....

3. What is the main idea of the passage ? ....

2. Writing Corner: *A) Read the sentences :*

" What has Munir achieved in his life ? "

1- When I was little, I always loved to draw and paint buy I found reading and writing difficult.

2- My parents discovered that I had dyslexia.

3- When I took my exams, I got really good results.

4- I got a prize for my art and then I decided I would like to be an artist one day.

Read and complete:- (be – was – for – prize – art – good)

1- I got really .... results.

2- I .... surprised and happy.

3- I got a .... for my art.

4- I would like to .... an artist one day.

5- Now, I teach .... at a charity.

C) Practise writing/ Write a short story about (110) words on :-

"An experience you will never forget"

It is said that situations are the best teacher. When I was a little child of about seven years old, I had an experience I will never forget. I always liked walking in the fields on my own. My mother used to advise me not to do so, but I thought I was right. One day, I was alone in a faraway part of the fields. It was very early in the morning and there weren't so many farmers there. Suddenly, I saw a group of fix or six large dogs in front of me. I was terrified that I decided to run away. As soon as I started to run, the dogs started to run after me. The dogs were much faster than I was. They were making such frightening noise that I felt it was the end of the world to me. All of a sudden, I heard the shouts of a group of farmers, who were running towards me with large sticks in their hands. Seeing the farmers with the sticks, the dogs escaped. I was rescued, but I learnt a lesson I will never forget. I must follow the advice of the elderly.

D) Write a biography of about (110) words about a person in your family or a public figure. شخصية عامة

"My father"

If all fathers are great, I have the greatest father ever. He means everything to me. He is kind, loving and careful. I owe أدين لـ my success and happiness to my father.

My father was born on January 22nd , 1949. He was an ideal student. He graduated from the Faculty of Engineering, Cairo University in 1972. Once he graduated, he joined the Armed Forces and took part in the 1973 War. He was one of the engineers who worked on destroying Bar Lev Line. When the war ended, he went back to university to do his postgraduate studies. دراسات عُليا He became a leading engineer in Egypt and started his own company that carried out several national and international projects. As a father to us, he was ideal. He cared a lot for our happiness, health and success in education and life. He taught us how to be positive members in our community. My father was a great success in both personal and work life. He also fought for his country. Thank you, father.

E) Write biography of about (110) words on :-

" Your favourite person "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

3. Speaking Corner :-

"Asking and answering questions about important thinks you have achieved" أشياء قمت بإنجازها

Question ?	Answers
1. What important things have you achieved in your life ?	- I have learned to swim.
2. When did you learn that ?	- I learned to swim three years ago.
1. Have your parents lived in the same house ?	- Yes, they have.
2. How long have you known your best friend ?	- Since 2010.
3. Has anyone in your family travelled by plane ?	- No, no one has travelled by plane.

Important Vocabulary :

(experience – snorkel – get married – pretend – orphanage – deaf – organise – scared of – practise – achieve – behave – take turn – work hard – do well – partner – good things – family life – events – adventure)

ride a bike	fence
get married	snorkel
climb a mountain	experience
deaf	normal
sign language	scared of
local school	naughty
relationship	walk past
- I like	- To succeed you should ....
- It's important to	- I always help ....
- I play	- I text my ....

Read and write sentences using the present perfect and the past simple tense :-

- They have ridden a horse.
- Last week, she visited Alexandria.
- Adel has never been to another country.
- They moved to a new flat two years ago.

Ask and answer questions about experiences :-

A : Which people in your family have been to another country ?
B : My cousin has been to England.
A : How long have you lived in your house ?
B : I've lived there since I was born.

1. Samy has played tennis.
2. Has Lina ever seen the film ? تستخدم للسؤال عن التجارب السابقة فى المضارع التام
3. They have never visited the zoo. تستخدم فى الجملة المنفية
4. Adel has had a car for 3 years. للتعبير عن المدة الزمنية التى إستغرقها الحدث فى زمن المضارع التام.
5. Sara has been at this house since 2010. تستخدم للتعبير عن بداية الحدث فى زمن المضارع التام.
6. Yesterday, Mohamed bought a new mobile. كلمة دالة على زمن الماضى البسيط، جملة مثبه فى الماضى البسيط.

Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

....
....

Unit (4)

1) Choose the correct answer :-

1. The teacher likes to .... us when he enters the class with his smile.

a) add b) greet c) introduce d) include

2. They .... the room with colours because of my birthday yesterday.

a) painting b) paints c) painted d) paint

3. Have you ever .... in a tent ?

a) slept b) sent c) won d) swum

4. A/An .... is a home for children whose parents are dead.

a) library b) botanical garden c) orphanage d) aquarium

5. He had a wonderful .... when he was climbing the mountain.

a) hobby b) adventure c) character d) stay

6. A/An .... is something that has happened to you in your life.

a) experience b) experiment c) delivery d) transport

7. Our teacher has a kind .... He deals with us as our father.

a) character b) charter c) person d) lesson

8. Aswan is a famous city .... the South of Egypt.

a) in b) at c) on d) of

9. The field had a long .... to stop the sheep from leaving.

a) trick b) fence c) robber d) luck

10. In summer, I want to .... a new language. It is important to understand others.

a) teach b) have c) learn d) join

11. They live in a .... house. There are many big rooms in it.

a) huge b) high c) small d) narrow

12. He didn't know the word so he asked me to .... its letters.

a) sell b) tell c) spill d) spell

13. .... in a difficulty with reading and writing caused by the brain's inability.

a) Windsurfing b) Dyslexia c) Gymnastics d) Athletics

14. The ………… controls everything in our bodies.

a) head b) eye c) brain d) chest

15. To ……… means to walk or drive behind someone.

a) follow b) pretend c) allow d) join

16. Has anyone in your family …………. a mountain ?

a) got b) climbed c) ridden d) moved

17. Have you ever …………. a musical instrument ?

a) travelled b) snorkelled c) played d) visited

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- He ………………………..(be) in London since 2010.

2- I have ……………………..(learn) sign language.

3- Have you …………………………(ever drive) a car ?

4- They ………………….. (travel) to Isamilia yesterday morning ?

5- Have you ever …………………………(be) to Aswan ?

6- I …………………………(not see) him since last October.

7- They …………………………(finish) their work since 8 in the evening.

8- We …………………………(already eat) our lunch.

9- He …………………………(live) in Luxor since he was ten.

10- I …………………………(meet) him last night bear his house.

3) Complete the following dialogue :-

Youssef asks Hassan about how he catches the bus for the zoo.

Youssef : Where can I catch the bus to the zoo ?

Hassan : (1) ……………………………………………………………… .

Youssef : The bus station ! (2) ………………………………………………………?

Hassan : Go past the museum and then turn left then take the second road on the right.

Youssef : Is it far away ?

Hassan : (3) …………………………… . It's just a 10-minute walk.

Youssef : (4) ……………………………………………………………… ?

Hassan : Yes, I have visited it before.

Youssef : Did you enjoy your time there ?

Hassan : (5) …………………………………………………… .

Unit (5) Young role Models

Lessons (1&2)

award (n)	جائزة – مكافأة	disabled people (n)	ذوى الإحتياجات الخاصة/ الهمم
speech (n)	حديث – خطاب	enter (ed) (v)	يدخل – ينضم
challenge (d) (v), (n)	يتحدى – تحدى	goals (n)	أهداف – طموحات
business person	رجل اعمال	mathematician	عالم الرياضيات
campaigner	ناشط – مناضل	space scientist	عالم فضاء
computer programmaer	مبرمج حاسوب	sports champion	بطل رياضى
engineer	مهندس	volunteer	متطوع
astronaut	رائد فضاء	manager	مدير
championship (n)	بطولة	university (n)	جامعة
company (n)	شركة	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز
space science (n)	علم الفضاء	achievements (n)	إنجازات
space engineering (n)	هندسة الفضاء	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
hyperloop (n)	الهايبرلوب (نظام نقل عال السرعة)	education (n)	التعليم
the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	equipment (n)	معدات
Cairo University (n)	جامعة القاهرة	blind (adj)	أعمى
design (ed) (v) , (n)	يُصمم – تصميم	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز

Lessons (3&4)

biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية (لشخص)	coronavirus (n)	فيروس كورونا (كوفيد – ١٩)
creative (adj)	مُبدع – مُبتكر	pandemic (n)	جائحة – وباء
create (d) (v)	يُنشئ – يبتكر	spectators (n)	مشاهدين - متفرجين
tournament (n)	دورى – مسابقة (رياضية)	organisers (n)	المنظمون
bubble (n)	فقاعة (طبية)	app (n)	تطبيق / برنامج على التليفون المحمول أو الكمبيوتر
medical team (n)	الفريق الطبى	staff (n)	طاقم – هيئة العاملين
contest (n)	مسابقة – منافسة	champions (n)	أبطال (رياضيون)
competitors (n)	متنافسين	championship (n)	بطولة
poems (n)	قصائد	dream (n)	حلم
particular (adj)	معين / خاص	tour (n)	جولة
software (n)	برنامج حاسوبى	Khan El-Khalili (n)	خان الخليلى (سوق تجارى)
Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الألومبية	final (n)	نهائى
health centre (n)	مركز طبى	incredible (adj)	مذهل / لا يُصدق

achievement (n)	إنجاز	Africa Cup of Nations (n)	كأس الأمم الإفريقية
medal (n)	ميدالية	success (n)	النجاح
test (ed) (v) ,(n)	يختبر – يفحص / إختبار	viewers (n)	مشاهدى (التلفاز)
Ivory Coast	دولة ساحل العاج	Egypt	مصر
Japan	دولة اليابان	Cairo	القاهرة
Abidjan	مدينة أبيدجان (فى دولة ساحل العاج)		

تستخدم غالباً صيغاً قصيرة لبعض الكلمات مثل :

Word الكلمة		Short form الصيغة القصيرة
application	تطبيق	= app
mathematics	علم الرياضيات	= maths
television	تلفيزيون	= TV
photographs	صور فوتوغرافية	= photos
aeroplane	طائرة	= plane

Lessons (5&6)

scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية	fact file (n)	ملف حقائق
Polish (v)	بولندى (الجنسية)	fair (n)	معرض
respond (ed) (v) , (n)	يرد – يستجيب / رد	NASA (n)	الإدارة الوطنية للملاحة الجوية والفضاء (ناسا)
culture (n)	ثقافة	Society for Science	جمعية العلوم والعامة
the Science, Technology, Engineering and Math school (STEM)		مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات	
perform (ed) (v)	يؤدى (عرض)	score (d) (v), (n)	يُسجل (هدفاً) – نتيجة
share (d) (v)	يُشارك – يتقاسم	news (n)	أخبار
broken (adj)	منكسر	musician (n)	موسيقار / عازف
repair (ed) (v) , (n)	يُصلح / إصلاح	teenager (n)	مراهق
Columbia University	جامعة كولومبيا	engineering (n)	الهندسة
later (adj)	فيما بعد – فى وق لاحق	swimmer (n)	سباح
Rio Olympics (n)	دورة الألعاب الألومبية الصيفية فى مدينة ريو (البرازيل)	preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادية
connect (ed) (v)	يصل – يربط	believe (d) (v)	يؤمن - يصدق

Conjugation of Irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get	يحصل على	got	got
pay	يدفع	paid	paid

build يبنى	built	built
choose يختار	chose	chosen
mean يعنى – يقصد	meant	meant
learn يتعلم	learnt	learnt
hold يجرى – يعقد	held	held
tell يخبر	told	told
hear يسمع	heard	heard
grow ينمو	grew	grown

Study these definitions

award	a prize for an event or a competition
mathematician	someone who works with maths
scientist	someone who works with science
artist	someone who is good at art
musician	someone who is good at music
app	software you can use on your computer or phone
competition	an event in which people try to be the best at something
create	to make something new
creative	good at thinking of new ideas or ways to do something
winner	another word for champion
competitor	a player in a tournament
incredible	another word for fantastic
spectators	the people who watch sports at a stadium
workers	the group of people who work somewhere

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

take	a boat يستقل القارب	finish	school يُنهى الدراسة
	a bus يستقل الأتوبيس		university يُنهى دراسة الجامعة
	homework يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزل	learn	a new skill يتعلم مهارة جديدة
eat	dinner يتناول وجبة العشاء		
	lunch يتناول وجبة الغداء	get	a job يحصل على وظيفة
	breakfast يتناول وجبة الإفطار		dressed يرتدى الملابس
win	a prize for a poem يفوز بجائزة لقصيدة		(go) home يصل للمنزل
	a medal يفوز بميدالية		an ward يحصل على جائزة
	a cup يفوز بكأس		a scholarship يحصل على منحة دراسية

create	an app ‏يبتكر تطبيق‏	have	a competition ‏لديه مسابقة / منافسة‏
			a baby ‏تُنجب مولود‏
			a tour ‏يقوم بجولة‏

make	a decision ‏يتخذ قرار‏
	a suggestion ‏يقدم إقتراح‏
	a plan ‏يخطط‏
	lunch ‏يُعد وجبة الغداء‏
	sure ‏يتأكد‏

Important Expressions & Prepositions

get paid	‏يحصل على أجر (مادى)‏	teams of students	‏فرق من الطلاب‏
bad for	‏ضار لـ‏	work hard on ...	‏يعمل بإجتهاد فى‏
work with computer	‏يتعامل مع الحاسب الآلى‏	receive the award	‏يستلم الجائزة‏
travel to	‏يسافر إلى‏	work for	‏يعمل لدى / لصالح ...‏
around the world	‏حول العالم‏	at home	‏فى المنزل‏
for 3 years now	‏لمدة ٣ سنوات حتى الآن‏	with top marks	‏بدرجات عالية‏
work out	‏يستنتج – يحل مسائل حسابية‏	take part in	‏يشارك فى‏
on a recent day	‏فى يوم مؤخراً‏	pass exams	‏يجتاز / ينجح فى الإمتحانات‏
play in a concert	‏يعزف فى فرقة موسيقية‏	ask for advice	‏يطلب النصيحة‏
play the guitar	‏يعزف على الجيتار‏	over 600 competitors	‏أكثر من ٦٠٠ متسابق‏
feel nervous	‏يشعر بالتوتر‏	from 32 countries	‏من ٣٢ دولة‏
go travelling together	‏نسافر سوياً‏	score goals	‏يُحرز أهداف‏
in the contest	‏فى المسابقة‏	work for months	‏يعمل لشهور‏
at the stadium	‏فى الإستاد‏	do an incredible job	‏يقوم بعمل لا يُصدق‏
test the player for coronavirus	‏يختبر اللاعبين للكشف عن إصابات بفيروس كورونا‏	on TV	‏فى التلفزيون‏
by night	‏بحلول الليل / ليلاً‏	on computer	‏على جهاز الحاسب‏
stay in the same hotel	‏يمكث فى نفس الفندق‏	on the Nile	‏فى النيل‏
travel to another country	‏يسافر لدولة أخرى‏	learn a musical instrument	‏يتعلم على آلة موسيقية‏
get 100%	‏حصل على مئة بالمئة‏	get the result of	‏يحصل على نتيجة‏
have a place at a top university	‏حصل على مكان فى جامعة القمة‏	(be) surprised by ...	‏مندهش بـ ...‏
feel happy for ...	‏يشعر بالسعادة لـ ..‏	respond to	‏يستجيب لـ‏
return to	‏يعود إلى‏	(have) a scholarship for ...	‏يحصل على منحة دراسية لـ...‏
do well	‏يؤدى جيداً‏	connect .... with	‏يربط / يوصل بـ ...‏
Well done ! = Great job !	‏أحسنت صنعاً !‏	happy for ...	‏سعيد لأجل‏

come second in ... حصل على المركز الثانى فى ..	
a hospital for children مستشفى للأطفال	a problem solving competition for مسابقة حل مشكلة لـ
from the age of 7 من عمر ٧ سنوات	work on a school project يقوم بإنجاز مشروع مدرسى
from the earliest until now من الأقدم حتى الآن	win fourth place يفوز بالمركز الرابع
as well as بالإضافة إلى	

Vocabulary Study :- Synonyms and Antonyms المترادفات والمتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف لها (نفس المعنى)	Antonym / opposite المضاد للكلمة
start يبدأ	begin	finish
fast سريع	quick	slow
pass يجتاز	succeed in	fail
contest مسابقة / نزاع	competition	
competitors متنافسين	players / opponenets	helpers مساعدين
staff طاقم / هيئة العاملين	workers	-
big كبير(الحجم)	large	small
champions أبطال	winners	losers خاسرين
clean يُنظف	wash	make dirty يجعله متسخاً
incredible رائع – لا يُصدق	fantastic – really good	terrible فظيع – رهيب
nobody لا أحد	no one	everyone كل شخص
respond يستجيب / يرد	reply	ignore يتجاهل
fact حقيقة / واقع	truth	imagination خيال
repair يُصلح	mend / fix	spoil / break يُفسد / يكسر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. To succeed in your exams means you .... them.

a) taste b) test c) pass d) fail

2. Noha works as a campaigner since she left school. The word "campaigner" here is a/an.

a) noun b) verb c) adjective d) adverb

3. We can add the suffix .... to make the noun of the verb "teach".

a) – est b) –ist c) –er d) –ly

4. We use the prefix (dis-) to give the .... of the adjective "appointed".

a) synonym b) antonym c) verb d) adverb

5. "Quick" has the same meaning as ....

a) slow b) fast c) high d) low

6. Another word of the word "champions" is ....

a) losers b) defenders c) attackers d) winners

7. The adjective from the verb "create" is ....

a) creates b) creative c) creation d) creator

8. The word ".............. " has the same meaning as the word "workers".

a) contest b) competitors c) champion d) staff

9. To give the opposite of the word "possible", we add the prefix ....

a) in- b) un- c) dis- d) im-

10. "Fix" is the synonym of the word ".............. ".

a) prepare b) fair c) repair d) refer

11. ".............. " is the opposite of "ignore".

a) Request b) Rewrite c) Respond d) Redial

12. The suffix (-ish) in the word "Polish" refers to the ....

a) job b) nationality c) hobby d) sport

13. The suffix .... gives a noun of the word "hard".

a) –ment b) –ship c) –tion d) –est

General Notes on Reading & Listening

(1) role / rule

*** role (n)** دور

ex.: - Sport plays a great role to keep us healthy.

*** rule (v) (ed)** يحكم

ex.: - Mohammed Ali ruled Egypt long ago.

---

(2) model – medal

*** model (n)** نموذج

ex.: - This is not a real plane. It's a model.

لاحظ : **role model** تستخدم بمعنى (مثل أعلى) أو نموذج يُحتذى به.

*** medal (n)** ميدالية

ex.:- Basem got the first gold medal in his life in 2017.

---

(3) disable – disabled – the disabled

*** disable (v)** يُسبب العجز أو الإعاقة – تقوم بتعطيل

ex.:- He was disabled in a car accident.

- The robbers disabled the alarm to rob the bank.

*** disabled (adj)** صفة بمعنى من ذوى الهمم / من ذوى الإعاقة

ex.:- I met a disabled boy in a wheelchair.

* the disabled (n) = disabled people. الأشخاص ذوى الإعاقة / ذوى الهمم (إسم جمع)، عند وضع **the** فإنها تُشيرإلى إسم جمع

ex. : - We should help the disabled.

ex. :- Some children are unable to read well.

---

(4) equipment (n) (مُعدات) هذه الكلمة لا تُعد (لا يُضاف لها **"s"** الجمع)

ex.:- The equipment in this studio is very expensive.

ولكن يمكن أن نجعلها مفرد وجمع بإضافة **(a piece of / pieces of)**

ex.:- The microwave is a useful piece of equipment in the kitchen.

ex.:- We need new pieces of equipment for our school lab.

---

(5) a reward – an award

*** a reward** مكافأة (لعمل جيد قام به شخص)

ex. : - My father gave me a reward for my success.

*** an award** جائزة رسمية (للفوز فى مسابقة مثلاً)

ex.: - Dr. Ahmed Zewail got many awards for his inventions and discoveries.

(1) audience – viewers – spectators – onlookers

*** aundience (n)** جمهور(المسرح أو السينما أو أى عرض)

ex. The music show was boring, so the audience were not content.

*** viewers (n)** متابعى / مشاهدى (التلفيزيون)

ex. : - 60% of the channel viewers prefer romantic films.

*** spectators (n)** جماهير (الملعب مثل كرة القدم)

ex.:- Today, there are 60,000 spectators in the stadium.

*** onlookers (n)** مشاهدى أو متابعى حدث أو واقعة

ex.:- There were many onlookers at the scene of the accident.

---

(2) volunteer (v), (n)

*** volunteer (ed) (v)** يتطوع

ex.:- He's volunteerd to help the disabled.

*** volunteer (n)** متطوع

ex.:- He works as a volunteer in a charity.

---

(3) team (n) تُعامل (كمفرد) عندما نقصد الفريق ككل، وتعامل (كجمع) عندما نقصد اللاعبين بشكل فردى.

*** team (n)** فريق (يُمكن أن يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع)

ex.:- My football team is Al-Ahli. ex.:- The team are happy. They've won the cup.

(4) staff – crew

*** staff** هيئة العاملين (بشركة – مدرسة – منظمة ...) ودائماً جمع

ex.:- The company staff are working hard to achieve more and more success.

*** crew** طاقم العاملين (على متن الطائرة – السفينة) وهى كلمة مفرد

ex.:- The crew on the ship is hardworking.

---

(5) pandemic جائحة (إنتشار وتفشى مرض فى جميع أنحاء البلاد والقارات)

ex. :- COVID-19 became a pandemic when it spread all over the world.

---

(6) Olympic – Olympics

*** Olympic (adj)** خاص بالألعاب الألومبية

ex.:- We need to care more about our Olmypic athletes.

*** Olympics (n)** دورة الألعاب الألومبية (الألومبياد)

ex.:- Tokyo Olympics were amazing.

---

(7) biography – autobiography

*** biography** سيرة ذاتية لشخص (يكتبها شخص عن آخر)

ex.:- The book gives us biogprahies of all the presidents.

*** autobiography** سيرة ذاتية لشخص (يكتبها الشخص عن نفسه)

ex.:- I wrote a famous autobiography about my early life.

---

(8) competition – contest – tournament – championship

*** competition (n)** منافسة بين (أشخاص ، منظمات ، مؤسسات ، شركات ..) على شئ

ex.: - There is a big competition between the two persons to get the job.

*** contest (n)** مسابقة (غنائية ، جمالية ... إلخ – نزاع على شئ)

ex.:- I always watch international beauty contests on TV.

*** tournament (n)** مسابقة أو دورى رياضى (بين مجموعة من اللاعبين أو الفرق بنظام خروج المغلوب)

ex. :- We hold a football tournament every year in our area.

*** championship (n)** بطولة (مسابقة فى رياضة معينة للوصل لأحسن لاعب أو فريق)

ex. :- The Football **World** Cup is the most popular championship for all countries.

*** champion (n)** بطل (رياضى)

ex.:- Chelsea sporting club won the European Champion League.

---

(1) at the age of .. = aged ... / in the age of (فى عمر ..)

ex. : - My uncle, Saad, died at the age of 58 / aged 58.

لاحظ : **in the age** تسخدم بمعنى (فى عصر)

ex:- In the stone age, people's tools were made of stone.

---

(2) good at / good for / good to

*** good at** (جيد فى) ex. : - Hani is good at sport.

*** good for** (مفيد لـ) ex.: - Milk is good for health.

*** good to** (عطوف على) ex.: - You should be good to the orphans.

---

(3) connect with / connect to

*** connect ... with** يربط بـ / يرتبط بـ

ex.: - She started a company to connect athletes with universities in the USA.

*** connect ... to** (الكهرباء / الإنترنت) يوصل .. بـ

ex.: - The computer is not connected to the internet.

---

(4) born in / born into

*** (be) born in** ولد فى (سنة – بلد)

ex.:- Fady was born in (1998 / Alexandria).

*** (be) born into + عائلة** ولد فى (عائلة)

ex.:- Rahma was born into a rich family.

---

(5) business – businesses

*** business (n)** تجارة / عمل (كلمة لا تُعد)

ex.:- She is busy doing her own business.

*** businesses (n)** الأعمال الخيرية / المشروعات أو المؤسسات التجارية

ex.:- I think small businesses can help with the country's economy. إقتصاد

---

(6) pass - passed

*** pass (n)** يجتاز / ينجح

ex.: - He passed his final exams.

*** succeed in + noun / (inf. + ing)**

ex.:- He succeeded in his final exams.

ex.:- He succeeded in getting a place in a special school.

Lessons (1-2) Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. You can .... the museum from different places, but I prefer the main gate.
   a) achieve   b) become   c) enter   d) mean
2. The doctors won a lot of .... for helping so many people in the health emergency.
   a) words   b) awards   c) challenges   d) villages
3. He is a .... for people who are disabled now.
   a) business person   b) space scientist
   c) campaigner   d) sports champion
4. She was a famous .... She used very big numbers to work things out in her job.
   a) campaigner   b) volunteer   c) sports champion   d) mathematician
5. Ahmed is a .... He works with hundreds of computers !
   a) business person   b) campaigner
   c) computer programmer   d) mathematician
6. (SB) Samar helps young engineers to .... their goals.
   a) pass   b) achieve   c) design   d) enter
7. (WB) A .... is someone who works with science.
   a) mathematician   b) volunteer   c) scientist   d) musician
8. (WB) Nahla's .... is to pass all her exams with top marks.
   a) goal   b) award   c) speech   d) space
9. (WB) It was a real .... to climb that mountain, but we succeeded!
   a) award   b) challenge   c) campaigner   d) village
10. The Egyptian champion Mohamed Ali Rashwan was in the final of the World Judo.............. in 1984.
    a) Bank   b) Achievement   c) Championship   d) Party
11. A ....is a new, very fast form of transport that travels on the ground.
    a) ship   b) boat   c) bicycle   d) hyperloop
12. The .... don't get paid for their work, but they like to help people.
    a) mathematician   b) astronauts   c) volunteers   d) artists
13. The rich .... people who have much money.
    a) has   b) are   c) have   d) is
14. (WB) The students took turns to .... a speech. Mine was about playing chess !
    a) drive   b) give   c) take   d) have
15. Leen is working hard .... her project.
    a) on   b) in   c) over   d) above
16. Drugs المخدرات are bad .... health.
    a) with   b) to   c) at   d) for

---

1. Omar .... his exams last week.
   a) passes   b) pass   c) passing   d) passed
2. Mona .... as a volunteer since she left school.
   a) work   b) works   c) has worked   d) working
3. Yasser .... a smartphone five years ago.
   a) hasn't had   b) didn't have   c) doesn't have   d) hasn't have
4. I have just .... a postcard to my pen-friend.
   a) sent   b) send   c) sending   d) sends
5. Where has Salma .... this week ?
   a) were   b) be   c) to be   d) been

6. (SB) Samar wanted to be an astronaut when she .... young.
a) was b) is c) were d) being

7. (WB) Last year, I .... to meetings around the world.
a) travel b) travels c) travelled d) travelling

8. (SB) Magdy has .... a lot of challenges in his life.
a) have b) had c) has d) having

9. (WB) Since I started my job, I .... with hundreds of computers !
a) have worked b) work c) works d) worked

10. (SB) What .... always been important to Ahmad ?
a) will have b) has c) to have d) having

11. .... Adel come on time this morning?
a) Has b) Is c) Was d) Do

12. I have .... my bike.
a) mend b) mended c) mends d) mending

13. My mother .... gone to the market.
a) is b) have c) has d) didn't

14. Has she cooked lunch ? - Yes, she ....
a) have b) did c) was d) has

15. The teacher .... the class an hour ago.
a) entered b) enters c) has entered d) enter

<u>2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-</u>

1- (SB) They worked hard on their design and they .... (win) the competition.

2- (SB) My mum ....(want) to be a sports champion when she was young.

3- (SB) What ....(have) Samar achieved ?

4- (WB) Last year, we ....(build) a very long bridge in China.

5- Has life ....(be) easy for Alaa ?

6- She has ....(paints) the fence by herself.

7- Someone ....(have) sent me this email.

8- How long.....................(you have) stayed in Alexandria ?

9- Tamer and Nour ....(has) been to the park.

10- The children have ....(wrote) a beautiful story.

General Exercises Lessons (1&2)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Laila is asking Maha about her role model.

Laila : Can I ask you a question ?

Maha : (1) ....

Laila : (2) .... ?

Maha : My role model is my mother.

Laila : Great! (3) .... ?

Maha : After my father's death, she suffered a lot for me.

Laila : How ? Can you explain more ?

Maha : (4) ....

Laila : She is a great woman. How do you feel towards her ?

Maha : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer :-

1. (WB) Schools should have .... for disabled people.
   a) equipment b) kitchens c) factories d) birds
2. Tourists come to Egypt from all ....the world.
   a) round b) a round c) around d) roundly
3. They train hard because they .... a competition next month.
   a) lend b) send c) make d) have
4. My uncle is happy because his son has .... an award.
   a) received b) made c) done d) given
5. My brother is working hard .... his project.
   a) on b) about c) by d) from
6. My .... is to come first and join a secondary school.
   a) lessons b) goal c) company d) reason
7. We all should know that being disabled doesn't mean you cannot .... your goals.
   a) achieve b) enter c) forget d) deceive
8. I haven't done my homework ....
   a) never b) since c) ever d) yet
9. She .... cleaned the car.
   a) can b) is c) will d) has
10. Mostafa has .... been to Kuwait before.
   a) never b) yet c) ever d) ago

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- They .... (wash) the carpets last Friday.

2- He .... (not make) tea yet.

3- Amir .... (write) a report yesterday.

4- She ....(not travel) to another country since she was a baby.

4) Complete the sentence with these words :-

(concerts – started – university – meetings – manager)

Gamal got his job after he finished (1) ………………… . He(2) ………………. working for the company ten years ago. He has been (3) …………………….. of the company since 2010. Gamal has (4) ……………… with people from different companies every day.

---

(5) (SB) Write a short text of about (110) words on :-

" Your role model "

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

Lessons (3&4)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. We would like to thank all of the ………… for working hard in the office today.
   a) finals b) awards c) staff d) crew
2. There were nearly 90,000 ………… in the stadium, and they all enjoyed the match.
   a) medals b) spectators c) players d) competitors
3. Our dream is to ………… many apps to help children learn.
   a) write b) play c) create d) win
4. A/An ………… is the life story of a person written by someone else.
   a) biography b) poem c) tale d) autobiography
5. We need ………… thinking to make that new app.
   a) impossible b) creative c) amazed d) small

6. (WB) Our school has a chess .... every year.

a) pandemic b) success c) app d) tournament

7. (WB) There are only eight teams left, so this is the ....-finals.

a) half b) quarter c) past d) semi

8. (WB) A/an .... is something you can use on your computer or phone.

a) competition b) app c) tournament d) biography

9. (SB) There were over 600 .... from 32 countries in the 2021 World Men's Handball Championship.

a) spectators b) competitors c) bubbles d) articles

10. She won a gold .... in the 100 metres.

a) metal b) medal c) model d) bubble

11. I am proud of my parents' .... in life.

a) spectators b) organisers c) instruments d) achievements

12. The "............. " are a set of international sports competitions that happen once every four years.

a) Olympics b) Staff c) Championship d) Tournament

13. Magdi Yaccoub works .... a surgeon.

a) for b) with c) as d) like

14. They went on a voyage ....the Nile.

a) in b) on c) down d) out

15. Policemen work .... night to protect us.

a) in b) on c) by d) of

16. Medical tests are done on players .... coronavirus.

a) for b) at c) from d) by

<u>Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-</u>

1. Youssef has .... finished his homework.

a) ever b) already c) yet d) ago

2. Sama .... tidied her room yet.

a) hasn't b) has c) have d) haven't

3. Hamza has already .... Egypt and started his journey.

a) leave b) left c) leaves d) leaving

4. I started work an hour ago, but I haven't finished ....

a) never b) yet c) ever d) ago

5. Huda has done housework ....

a) ago b) never c) yet d) already

6. (SB) He's already .... three languages.

a) learn b) learned c) learns d) learning

7. (WB) They haven't visited the Pyramids ....

a) yet b) ever c) never d) already

8. (SB) Have you .... to the new restaurant yet ?

a) be b) been c) being d) are

9. (WB) I have done my homework ....

a) ever b) for c) already d) since

10. (SB) We've already .... our lunch.

a) ate b) eats c) eating d) eaten

11. Have you finished your homework .... ?

a) ago b) yet c) ever d) never

12. A : Have you finished your homework ? B : - Yes, I have finished it ....

a) yet b) just c) already d) never

13. I haven't .... breakfast yet

a) have b) has c) having d) had

14. I'm not going to watch the film. I have seen it ....

a) already b) yet c) never d) ever

15. Youssef .... three Arabic lessons already.

a) has b) has had c) have had d) is having

---

2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- (SB) Haytham has created an app .... (yet).

2- (WB) I have already .... (came) to school.

3- (SB) I haven't finished my homework .... (already).

4- (WB) They have .... (yet) seen Cairo by night.

5- Nada has .... (won already) a gold medal.

6- I haven't done my project .... (then).

7- .... (Have Amal met her new teacher yet ?

8- .... (Has) they visited the Egyptian Museum yet ?

9- She hasn't .... (have) her breakfast yet.

General Exercises on Lessons (3&4)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Ashraf and Mustafa are talking about their jobs in the future.

Ashraf : Hello, Mustafa. How are you ?

Mustafa : Hello, Ashraf. Fine, thanks.

Ashraf : What would you like to be in the future ?

Mustafa : (1) ....

Ashraf : (2) ....?

Mustafa : Because I like building new houses and roads.

Ashraf : (3) ....?

Mustafa : I need to join the Faculty of Engineering. What about you ?

Ashraf : (4) ....

Mustafa : A chemist صيدلى is a useful job. I wish you good luck.

Ashraf : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer :-

1. Mr. Ali works .... a volunteer in a charity in his free time. He is a helpful man.

a) for b) as c) of d) on

2. The festival was great. Really, you are excellent ....

a) beggars b) organisers c) robbers d) engineers

3. He is an intelligent person. He .... a good app.

a) threw b) stole c) invited d) created

4. (WB) They have .... a tour of Cairo's museums.

a) done b) had c) taken d) driven

5. We all admire his .... ideas. He will be a very good writer.

a) boring b) creative c) selfish d) violent

6. My .... is to be a successful scientist in the future.

a) dream b) competition c) volunteer d) concert

7. The word "contest" is the synonym of the word ....

a) composition b) player c) worker d) competition

8. (SB) She ....been to another country yet.

a) hasn't b) has c) haven't d) have

9. You can drive your car. I have .... mended it.

a) never b) since c) already d) yet

10. Shahd .... her room alone.

a) has already tidied b) has tidied already

c) hasn't already tidied d) hasn't tidied already

3) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Hamza .... (not do) his homework yet.

2- .... (you learn) English yet ?

3- Omar .... (already drive) at the chess.

4- We .... (has) already watched the film.

4) (WB) Complete the sentence with these words :-

(spectators – holds – achievements – be - clean)

Egypt has already won the Africa Cup of Nations seven times. That is a fantastic (1)................... In 2023, the contest will (2) .... in Ivory Coast, who have already been winners twice before. The games will be in six different stadiums. The biggest stadium (3) .... about 60,000 (4) ....

(5) Write an email of about (110) words to your friend Mona who lives in Canada about the importance of helping other people :

- Your name is Reham and your email address is rehammagid@yahoo.com.

- Your friend's email address is mohasaleh@gmail.com

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Exercises on Vocabulary lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Jakub is from Poland. He is ....

a) English b) Polish c) French d) British

2. I have got a .... to a university of Cambridge in the UK.

a) training b) tournament c) scholarship d) speech

3. Please, make a fact .... about a young role model in your life.

a) fill b) file c) fin d) fight

4. A/An ....is an event which people, businesses, etc. show and sell their goods.

a) fair b) shop c) culture d) concert

5. (SB) She started a company to .... athletes with universities in the USA.

a) correct b) connect c) return d) achieve

6. (WB) I have .... the chair that was broken.

a) won b) repaired c) come d) scored

7. (WB) I've already won many tournaments in my country, but I haven't been to the........ .

a) performance b) Olympics c) champion d) biography

8. A : You came first in a short story competition !

B : Wow! I can't .... it. That's good news!

a) work b) believe c) score d) play

9. Water is used to help plants to ....

a) grow b) die c) return d) connect

10. A person who is between 13 and 19 years old is called a/an ....

a) elderly b) adult c) child d) teenager

11. All students .... the play well in our school performance yesterday.

a) performed b) talked c) responded d) won

12. Who .... first in the contest ?

a) went b) came c) took d) flew

13. Students start school .... the age of six.

a) for b) at c) in d) by

14. Last year, we worked .... a school project.

a) at b) in c) on d) about

15. She .... in her final exams.

a) passed b) succeeded c) crossed d) told

16. Most successful people were born .... poor families.

a) in b) on c) into d) onto

General Exercises on Lessons (5&6)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

An interviewer is making an interview with an Egyptian space engineer.

Interviewer : Welcome. Samar. Can you tell us about your job ?

Samar : (1) ....

Interviewer: When did you want to be a space engineer ?

Samar : (2) ....

Interviewer : A young child ! That's great. (3) ....?

Samar : I studied space engineering in Cairo University.

Interviewer : (4) .... ?

Samar : Yes, I won a space technology competition in the USA.

Interviewer : Were there any other competitors from Egypt in that competition ?

Samar : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. (SB) .... an amazing achievement !
   a) Why b) What c) Where d) Who
2. (SB) The Polish musician Frederic Chopin .... piano music.
   a) passed b) wrote c) won d) got
3. Samar .... a contest in space technology.
   a) created b) looked c) won d) learned
4. Congratulations! You have .... your exams.
   a) passed b) failed c) lost d) succeeded
5. Basel likes music very much. He dreams of .... in a big concert.
   a) performing b) gaining c) making d) having
6. Soha plays a musical instrument. She wants to be a famous .... when she grows up.
   a) space scientist b) musician c) nurse d) business person
7. (WB) A/An .... is a player in a tournament.
   a) competitor b) actor c) astronaut d) technician
8. She has .... seen Cairo by night.
   a) since b) ever c) already d) yet
9. Why are you so late ? - You .... done the task yet.
   a) have b) haven't c) has d) hasn't
10. (SB) I've .... eaten breakfast.
    a) already b) ever c) yet d) for

(3) (WB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(decided – won – has – play – children)

Hi !

I've got some good news. I have (1) .... an award! As you know, my family help every week at a hospital for (2) .... We (3) .... games with the children and read them stories. The nurses at the hospital (4) .... to give my family an award for our work.

(4) (WB) Write a short biography of about (110) words on :-

" A famous person "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Unit (5)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Salwa is telling her cousin that she got a scholarship.

Salwa: How are you, Maha ?

Maha : Fine, and you ?

Salwa: I'm okay. I have good news.

Maha : (1) .... ?

Salwa: (2) ....

Maha : A scholarship ! Well done! Great news!

Salwa: (3) ....

Maha : (4) .... ?

Salwa: There was an international competition and I won it.

Maha : Have you told your parents ?

Salwa: (5) .... You are the first to know.

---

(2) (SB) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :-

My friend Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. When she was six, she won a prize for a poem she wrote. She has already written a book of stories. Now, she's writing her second look, but she hasn't finished it yet. She really likes to be creative. She has played the guitar for three years now. She's played in two concerts already. She felt very nervous but she was amazing !

Aya would like to volunteer to teach writing and music to children one day. Her other dreams is to create an app to help children learn. She hasn't been to another country yet, but there are lots she wants to visit ! Maybe we can go travelling together.

1- Do you think Aya is interested in technology ? Why / Why not ?

....

2- Infer how many hobbies does Aya have ? Mention two.

....

3- Explain how important voluntary work is for your city / village. Mention two points.

....

4- The passage is about ....

a) Aya   b) school days   c) travel   d) friends

5- Which of the following can be the best summary to the last paragraph ? -............... .

a) Aya's dreams   b) Aya's childhood

c) Jobs   d) Travel

6- The underlined pronoun "it" refer to ....

a) story   b) first book   c) second book   d) app

---

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Nada wants to be a computer .... in the future.

a) volunteer   b) program   c) application   d) programmer

2. Munir would like to take part .... the next match, but the captain refuses.

a) on   b) in   c) at   d) about

3. To be successful, you need to work hard and have some special ....

a) bins   b) pins   c) skills   d) skulls

4. (WB) A/An .... is someone who works with maths.

a) mathematician   b) engineer   c) artist   d) volunteer

5. (WB) Someone who works with science is called a/an ....

a) operator   b) business person   c) scientist   d) employer

6. (SB) The word "staff" gives the same meaning as ....

a) spectators   b) puzzles   c) workers   d) hotels

7. There haven't been .... in football matches because of coronavirus.

a) spectators   b) stadiums   c) balls   d) players

8. Maya .... to travel abroad since she was a student.

a) is decided   b) was decided   c) is deciding   d) has decided

9. I .... the story.

a) have already read   b) already read have

c) already have read   d) have read already

10. Have they watered the plants .... ?

a) since   b) ever   c) for   d) yet

<u>4) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-</u>

1- Samia ....(not fix) her mobile yet.

2- The boy ....(already buy) vegetables from the market alone

3- .... (Have) the teacher asked you to make a report yet ?

4- She has done her maths homework ....(yet).

<u>4) (WB) Complete the sentence with these words :-</u>

(for – after – started – culture – scientist)

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great (1) .... like Sameera Moussa. After she finished preparatory school, she (2) .... at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths School in Alexandria. She then learned more and more about science as well as how to look (3) .... the environment and Egypt's (4)................... .

(6) Write a short biography of about (110) words on :-

" A biography about a person you admire "

1) Min-Test on Unit (5) for Al-Azhar Students

1) Read and match :-

1. I am good at computers so	a. ( ) one book already.
2. She won an award for writing	b. ( ) software you can use on your computer or phone.
3. He has finished writing	c. ( ) I want to be a campaigner.
4. It was a real challenge to climb a mountain,	d. ( ) When she was a child.
5. An app is	e. ( ) I want to be a computer programmer.
	f. ( ) but we succeeded.

2) Read and correct the underlined words :-

1. They have already **see** Cairo by night. (……………………)
2. "Look! I've finished my painting!" Great **paint**. (……………………)
3. Someone who works with science is **an artist**. (……………………)
4. Aya hasn't been to another country **already**. (……………………)

2) Use your brain, think smart :-

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Sama passed her exams …………… top marks last week.

a) about b) for c) with d) on

2. The ………… on the plane are hardworking.

a) staff b) Olympics c) crew d) audience

3. A/An ……………… is written by a person about another person.

a) autobiography b) biography c) competition d) championship

4. Fruits and vegetables are good ………… health.

a) to b) at c) for d) on

5. The TV programme has lost favour with ………… recently.

a) viewers b) spectators c) audience d) onlookers

Lessons (1/2) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Nader and Tamer are talking about the place of Nader's house.

Nader : Hello, Tamer.

Tamer : (1) .... get to your house, please ?

Nader : (2) .... by taxi, bus or by train ?

Tamer : I will come by taxi. (3) .... tell me the easiest way to get to your house ?

Nader : Take the main road. Go straight on then take the third road on the right.

Tamer : Is it on this road ?

Nader : No. (4) .... the station.

Tamer : The train station ?

Nader : Yes. Then (5) ...., it's opposite the bank.

Tamer : Thank you very much.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. They made this area a nature .... to protect the dolphins.
   a) land b) environment c) reserve d) wildlife

2. He came home later than ....
   a) usual b) special c) local d) especial

3. If there's a .... nearby, we can stop for a hot drink and a snack.
   a) station b) market c) library d) café

4. We decided to have a picnic down by the .... I like looking at water.
   a) library b) lake c) station d) museum

5. .... the second road on your right.
   a) To talking b) Taking c) Take d) To take

6. We finished the game late .... night.
   a) in b) at c) on d) for

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- I get up at 7 am. (morning)

2- Go until you leave the traffic lights. (past)

3- The match starts in 15 minutes. It's 07:45 now. (eight pm.)

4- I never work at the weekends. (Fridays)

Lessons (3/4) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

A tourist wants to travel to Luxor.

Assistant : Good afternoon. What can I do for you ?

Tourist : Good afternoon. (1) ....

Assistant : To Luxor ? Of course. (2) ....?

Tourist : I want three tickets, please.

Assistant : That's 100 LE.

Tourist : (3) ....?

Assistant : The next train leaves in an hour.

Tourist : (4) ....?

Assistant : The train leaves from platform 4.

Tourist : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. She is always interested in .... science. She wants to travel to the moon.

a) land b) maths c) engineering d) space

2. Young people usually have more .... than old people.

a) electricity b) energy c) pollution d) space

3. The train was about to leave the ....

a) station b) stop c) library d) café

4. I .... the country to the city. The country is more peaceful.

a) prefer b) hate c) refuse d) discuss

5. The plane .... in ten minutes.

a) will leave b) is leaving c) leave d) leaves

6. The journey .... about 13 hours.

a) takes b) take c) will take d) taking

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- The film is at half past nine. (begins)

2- The arrival of the plane in New York is at eight tomorrow. (arrives)

3- There is an English exam at 2 pm next Thursday. (starts)

4- I'm so bored! What time is the end of this lesson ? (does)

Lessons (5/6) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Suzy invites Mayar to meet up tomorrow.

Suzy : Would you like to meet up tomorrow ?

Mayar : (1) ...., Suzy. Where will we go ?

Suzy : There is a school trip to the El-Orman Garden.(2) .... to go?

Mayar : I'd love to! But what can we see there ?

Suzy : (3) ....

Mayar : Great! (4) ....?

Suzy : No, I think there's a nearby café where we can have lunch.

Mayar : (5) .... ?

Suzy : We'll met at 8 o'clock at the school entrance.

Mayar : OK. See you there.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I suggested going to the park at the next weekend, but my mother ....

a) replied b) accepted c) disagreed d) agreed

2. Let's go .... and have something to eat. It's raining.

a) outdoors b) indoors c) indoor d) outdoor

3. We spent a fantastic day on a boat .... the river.

a) for b) at c) in d) on

4. We can all .... suggestions, but the manager has the last word.

a) make b) do c) take d) get

5. .... over the bridge.

a) Goes b) To go c) Went d) Go

6. When does the play .... ?

a) finish b) finishes c) finishing d) will finish

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- The shop is open from 10 am. to 11 pm. (closes)

2- I visit my grandparents every Friday. (the weekend)

3- The restaurant is at the end of the street. (corner)

4- The end of the match is at quarter past eight. (finishes)

Unit (2) Lessons (1/2) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Dalia is at the clothes shop to buy a new dress.

Assistant : Can I help you ?

Dalia : Yes. (1) .... this dress in blue ?

Assistant : Yes, we have. Here you are.

Dalia : (2) ....?

Assistant : Of course. The fitting rooms are over there.

Dalia : (3) ....?

Assistant : (4) ....?

Dalia : It's too small. Do you have a larger one ?

Assistant : Let me see. Yes, there's a larger one.

Dalia : OK, (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I bought this coat at 50% .... It's half-price.
   a) advert b) offer c) sale d) discount
2. She got a job in .... She works in a factory.
   a) a filed b) a school c) farming d) industry
3. Bread is baked in a/an ....
   a) oven b) email c) microwave d) event
4. Connect the .... to the CD player to have loud sound.
   a) printers b) toasters c) speakers d) headphones
5. My school is .... than my father's office.
   a) farther b) far c) the farther d) farthest
6. I don't want to go to .... of those two stores. Let's go home.
   a) both b) either c) neither d) none

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- Hady is the most intelligent boy in our town. (more)

2- Leila and Amy didn't pass the exam. (Neither)

3- Tarek has got neither time nor money to travel abroad. (either)

4- I can play football. I can play tennis, too. (both)

Unit (2) Lessons (3/4) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Aya is talking to the assistant about her problem with his computer.

Aya : I'm Aya. I have a problem

Assistant : Hello. (1) ...., Aya?

Aya : Yesterday, when I was doing my homework, my laptop suddenly turned off.

Assistant : (2) ....?

Aya : I bought it last week.

Assistant : Was the computer plugged in ?

Aya : (3) .... I was charging the battery.

Assistant : (4) .... turn on the computer again ?

Aya : Yes, but then it said my password was wrong.

Assistant : I just emailed you a form to (5) .... to get a new password to log in again.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. He typed in his password to ....

a) turn on b) log in c) pick up d) plug in

2. Can you help me with this .... ? - I can fill it in.

a) firm b) frame c) farm d) form

3. Architects know how to .... buildings.

a) design b) damage c) form d) paint

4. I can't .... life without technology. It makes our life easier.

a) improve b) think c) decide d) imagine

5. The telephone .... while I was doing my homework.

a) was rung b) rings c) rang d) was ringing

6. When .... to the last party ?

a) did you go b) do you go c) are you going d) were you going

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- He used to study English when he was at the university. (studied)

2- She was resting when I came home from the shop. (While)

3- My father saw me while I was playing in the street. (when)

4- He wrote the homework during lunch break. (while)

Unit (2) Lessons (5/6) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

A customer has a problem with the internet service.

Assistant : Hello, we are Customer Service, how can I help you ?

Customer : Hi, (1) ……………………………………………………………………………… .

Assistant : I'm sorry to hear that. (2) ………………………………………………………….?

Customer : My connection is still dropping-out and the speed is very slow.

Assistant : Let me check. (3) ……………………………………………………………….?

Customer : My phone number is 01009191586.

Assistant : Thank you. The system does not show any problems in your area.

Customer : So, (4) …………………………………… on my phone ?

Assistant : I can't tell from here. I'll send a technician to your house.

Customer : Okay, (5) ……………………………… home then.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I sent it …………. and I will buy a different one.

a) for b) up c) back d) behind

2. Your website says the delivery …………… five days but I'm still waiting!

a) makes b) does c) gives d) takes

3. You should …………. calm to be able to solve the problem.

a) keep b) have c) give d) order

4. My mother is very happy …………… my present to her.

a) at b) with c) in d) for

5. …………. Huda and Marwa stayed up late to revise for the exam.

a) Both b) Either c) Neither d) All

6. Last year, I ……………… a lot of research.

a) did b) was doing c) do d) done

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- She used to play tennis when she was young. (played)

2- We were waiting for the bus when it began to rain. (while)

3- Mona was washing the dishes when her father called her. (While)

4- English is more difficult than Arabic. (less)

October Monthly Practice (1) based on Units (1&2)

1) Choose the correct answer to complete the following dialogue :-

You want to book a train ticket to Tanta.

You : What time does the next train to Tanta leave ?

Clerk : It leaves (1) (in – at) 10:15.

You : (2) (Which platform does – Which platform did) the train leave from ?

Clerk : It leaves from platform 8.

You : (3) (How long – How often) does the journey take ?

Clerk : It takes two hours.

You : (4) (How many – How much) is the ticket ?

Clerk : It's 80 L.E., please.

You : Is it the express train ?

Clerk : Yes, (5) (it is – it does).

---

2) Choose what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1. A friend of yours wants to know when the bus arrives.

(The bus arrives at 6:00 pm. – When does the bus arrive ?)

2. You explain your complaint about the new computer to the assistant.

(The new computer isn't working well – The new computer is working well).

3. You tell your pen-friend what time school starts in Egypt.

(The school starts at 07:00 am – The school starts at 07:00 pm.)

---

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

Reading is a useful and important habit in our modern life. It gives us the chance to think and dream. It provides us with a lot of information that helps to make our life better. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It's better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you read with your friends.

People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment** just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather reports. We also read the messages and the emails that we receive.

A) Read the questions, then choose the correct answer :-

1: A : Why is reading important and useful ? B : Because it gives us the chance to .....

a) play and have fun b) think and dream

c) draw and imagine d) climb trees and do a lot of activities

2: Why do students read ?

a) For their study and research. b) For their enjoyment.

c) For their dreams. d) For their fun.

3: How can you remember what you read ?

a) Delete the important points. b) Use your glasses to see well.

c) Draw squares under the points. d) Underlined or circle the important points.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

4. What do you think the word "**Others**" refer to ?

a) goals b) people c) points d) glasses

5. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means ....

a) discussion b) pleasure c) sadness d) mysterious

6. When you read, you need to be in a .... place.

a) quiet b) noisy c) dirty d) dark

---

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The sports centre is .... the market.

a) next b) next to c) between d) on the coner

2. You can make hot drinks in a ....

a) kettle b) fridge c) bridge d) coffee machine

3. Nader likes watching fish at the ....

a) museum b) square c) aquarium d) station

4. A/An .... is a large area of water with land around it.

a) aquarium b) road c) traffic d) lake

5. The Sphinx at Giza is perhaps Egypt's most famous ....

a) man b) ruler c) monument d) charge

6. Now, ... on the computer.

a) turn b) plug c) fill d) change

7. I saw a/an .... for some cheap furniture in our local paper.

a) message b) form c) email d) advert

8. I think Yara is the .... girl in the school.

a) beautiful b) most beautiful c) more beautiful d) much beautiful

9. Nader and Judy visit their grandparents .... the weekend.

a) at b) in c) of d) with

10. You can .... get the bus or the train to the shopping centre.

a) both b) none c) either d) neither

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- The train to Port Said ....(leaves – is leaving) this station at 03:15.

2- This is the .... (better – best) juice I have ever drunk.

3- When does this plane .... (arrived – arrive) in Cairo ?

6) Read the sentences, then choose the answers that give the same meaning :-

1) My father is taller than my mother. (shorter)

- My father is shorter than my mother.
- My mother is shorter than my father.

2) The first performance of the school play is after 2 days. Today is Monday.

- The first performance of the school play begins next Thursday.
- The first performance of the school play begins next Wednesday.

3) She was doing some shopping when I met her yesterday. (While)

- While she was doing some shopping I met her yesterday.
- While I met her yesterday, she was doing some shopping.

October Monthly Practice (2) Based on Units (1&2)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Naira gives Susan the directions to the restaurant.

Susan : Can you give me the directions to the restaurant ?

Naira : Yes, sure. (1) .... know the supermarket ?

Susan : Yes, I do.

Naira : When you get to the supermarket, (2) .... the second road. Go past the cinema.

Susan : (3) .... from there ?

Naira : No, it is opposite the cinema.

Susan : Thank you very much.

Naira : Be careful, there are many cars and buses on the way.

Susan : I really want to (4) .... for your help.

Naira : (5) ....all.

---

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1- You want to know how to go to the bank.

....

2- You ask the assistant about the price of the trousers.

....

3- Your friend asks you to describe how to go to your house. Give him/her directions.

....

---

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

In the 1940s, Percy Spencer was testing a machine that caused him to develop what we know as the modern-day microwave oven. Over the years, this kitchen machine became one of the most important items that make work much easier. **It** is used to heat food quickly. When food is heated in the microwave, energy is taken into the food. Microwave ovens have better cooking quality as you are heating food from the inside out, rather than the outside in, we use a usual oven, so the main difference between foods cooked on a usual oven against a microwave is the cooking time. According to the World Health Organisation (WHO), food cooked in the microwave oven is just as safe and has similar values as food cooked on the usual oven. Microwaved food can often be healthier because of short cooking times and less of a need for extra fail, oil, or water needed for cooking.

1- What is the main idea of this passage ? ....

2- What do you prefer, a microwave or a usual oven ? Why ?

....

3- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to ? ....

4- The World Health Organisation says that food in a microwave is .... food in a usual oven.

a) safer than b) as safe as c) not as safe as d) less safe than

5- The .... is the way of cooking food that the microwave uses.

a) inside only b) outside only c) outside in d) inside out

6- Microwave food can be healthier because we use .... fat and oil.

a) more b) much c) lots of d) less

---

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1- Be .... with those plates or you will drop them.

a) careful b) helpful c) peaceful d) useful

2- Sorry, this train doesn't stop at that ....

a) square b) station c) library d) museum

3- We should care about the environment and not .... it.

a) discuss b) pollute c) cross d) prefer

4- Tell me all the .... news!

a) late b) latest c) later d) latter

5- The car was a deal at that ....

a) price b) prize c) race d) rice

6- My laptop computer was plugged in. I was charging the ....

a) battery b) form c) light d) energy

7- The south of Egypt is famous for its beautiful .... like carpets, baskets and colourful pots.

a) adventure b) engineering c) handicrafts d) calligraphy

8- The party is .... the first of October.

a) on b) at c) in d) of

9- What time .... school finish tomorrow ?

a) does b) do c) is d) will

10- A : Are you at home or at work ? B : .... I'm in the car.

a) Both b) Either c) Neither d) None

5) Complete the sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- The first lesson is at eight. (starts)

....

2- I went to bed late in the evening. (midnight)

....

3- This exercises is easier than the last one. (The last exercise)

....

7) Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :-

" Ways of shopping "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit (3) Lessons (1&2) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Walled is talking to Mohammed who is worried about his exams.

Waleed : Hello. How are you, dear friend ?

Mohammed : (1) ...., thank you. And you ?

Waleed : I'm also fine. (2) .... sad ?

Mohammed : Because I'm worried about my exams.

Waleed : (3) ....?

Mohammed : Well, I revised well and I'm doing well on my studies.

Waleed : (4) .... you feel worried about ?

Mohammed : You know. I'm not good at Maths, I'm worried about this.

Waleed : I hope you will do well in your exams.

Mohammed : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. She is always chatting with her .... in the garden.
   a) neighbour b) neighbourhood c) neighbouring d) neighbourly

2. As the sunset, the .... came one.
   a) lighters b) sunlight c) traffic lights d) streetlights

3. What time are they going to .... the new washing machine ?
   a) offers b) deliver c) give d) push

4. Sham El-Nessim .... dates back to the times of the Ancient Egyptians.
   a) stop b) festival c) station d) platform

5. This wet weather is so ....
   a) depressing b) depressed c) excited d) tired

6. A : Why did you buy a guitar if you can't pay ? B : I ....
   a) am learning b) will learn c) learn d) am going to learn

---

3) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- I intend to spend the weekend in the village. (going)

2- I was so bored in that lesson, I almost fell asleep. (That lesson)

3- He has arranged to visit Paris next month. (visiting)

4- Sara is interested in reading the story. She likes it. (That story)

Lessons (3&4) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Tom and his Mum are talking about the new restaurant.

Tom : You are the best cook, Mum.

Mum : (1) ....

Tom : Are you going to eat that last sandwich ?

Mum : No, I'm not. (2) ....?

Tom : Yes, please.

Mum : But you (3) .... dinner with your father in an hour.

Tom : Yes, but we are eating in that new restaurant, and they serve very little food.

Mum : OK, I'll heat the sandwich in (4) .... for you.

Tom : Thank you very much.

Mum : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The child broke his toy. He asked his father to .... it.
   a) damage   b) repair   c) welcome   d) greet
2. We found out about the community project on the social .... service.
   a) carpet   b) network   c) bench   d) media
3. My parents were waiting to .... us at the door. We usually hug them.
   a) greet   b) hit   c) send   d) push
4. Because of the ...., trees died in that area.
   a) introduction   b) competition   c) experience   d) pollution
5. Have you heard the news ? They .... build a new school here.
   a) are going   b) are going to   c) going to   d) are
6. A : Do you know what to buy your dad for his birthday ?
   - B : Yes, I .... to buy him a watch.
   a) can   b) will   c) going   d) 'm going

---

3) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- He has decided to become an engineer. (going to)

2- We have planned to spend the weekend on a farm. (going)

3- They intend to buy a new house. (going to)

4- Does Noha's uncle plan to visit Luxor ? (Is)

Lessons (5&6) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Randa introduces her new friend Nada to Rasha.

Rasha : Hello, Randa. How are you ?

Randa : (1) .... What about you ?

Rasha : I'm also fine, thank you. (2) ....?

Randa : She is my friend Nada.

Rasha : (3) ....Nada.

Randa : Pleased to see you, Rasha.

Rasha : (4) ....?

Randa : I live in Giza, but I moved to this school last week.

Rasha : I'm from Aswan, but now I live in Giza.

Randa : OK, we (5) .... to be late, Hurry up.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I'm sorry, you can't meet the manager. Recently, he is .... a meeting.
   a) at b) on c) in d) of
2. I was walking along the .... when I suddenly felt very tired.
   a) roof b) ground c) door d) pavement
3. At our community meeting, we decided to .... the building of these old houses.
   a) improve b) design c) discuss d) escape
4. He and his family live .... a boat on a beach.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
5. I'm not really enjoying it. In fact, it's quite ....
   a) interesting b) exciting c) boring d) bored
6. I have stopped eating sweets. I .... sugar again.
   a) don't eat b) 'm not eating c) am not eaten d) am not going to eat

---

3) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- They have intended to stay at home next holiday. (going to)

2- She has arranged everything to get married. (getting)

3- My mother is going to do her shopping tomorrow. (intends)

4- Do you arrange to sleep early tomorrow ? (Are)

Unit (4) Lessons (1&2) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Zeinab and Ammar are talking about hobbies.

Zeinab : Do you have a hobby, Ammar ?

Ammar : Not exactly, there is nothing special I like doing, (1)..........................?

Zeinab : I like playing music so much.

Ammar : (2) ....?

Zeinab : I've played the guitar.

Ammar : (3) .... you played the guitar ?

Zeinab : (4) .... more than seven years.

Ammar : Do you have music lesson ?

Zeinab : (5) .... I have music lesson on Wednesdays.

Ammar : I think I will try to play music some time.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The violin is my very favourite ....

a) sport b) machine c) tool d) musical instrument

2. I asked the people in my class about their .... in life.

a) developments b) environment c) experiments d) experiences

3. It is important to learn about the .... of your family.

a) history b) date c) maths d) arts

4. My aunt .... to a new flat.

a) changed b) moved c) turned d) exchanged

5. How many times .... your teacher explained this grammar ?

a) has b) does c) is d) will

6. Shahenda .... to Aswan for a week. She'll be back tomorrow.

a) is b) has been c) has gone d) was

---

3) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- He is a swimmer. He started swimming when he was five years old. (He has been)

2- Jana knows Tamer. They first met at a party 23 years ago. (for)

3- This is our first visit to Paris. (never)

4- I started doing my homework an hour ago. Now, it's 3 pm. (since)

Unit (4) Lessons (3&4) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Tasnim is bored because she always stays home.

Yassin : Hi, Tasnim. How are things ?

Tasnim : Not really well.

Yassin : Oh. (1) ....?

Tasnim : I'm bored and I always stays home.

Yassin : (2) .... the new sports club near here ?

Tasnim : (3) ....

Yassin : Bad luck! You can play many different sports there.

Tasnim : (4) ....?

Yassin : Yes, I did. I joined it last month.

Tasnim : Well, I think (5) .... soon.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. It was so .... that the driver couldn't see the way ahead.
   a) happy b) sunny c) foggy d) noisy
2. Tom had a .... that he got lost.
   a) dream b) trip c) picnic d) fun
3. Are you interested .... music, Salma ?
   a) on b) at c) by d) in
4. When Mai .... school, she couldn't speak English at all.
   a) started b) behaved c) followed d) tricked
5. I .... to bed very late last night.
   a) go b) was going c) went d) take
6. I .... very well since I bought a new bed. I don't find it very comfortable.
   a) was sleeping b) doesn't sleep c) haven't slept d) didn't sleep

---

3) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- I last met him last Monday. (I haven't)

2- She started driving one month ago. (She has)

3- I haven't seen Ali since we were at school. (I last)

4- He has studied English since 2015. (in)

Unit (4) Lessons (5&6) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Noha is talking to Nora about her grandfather.

Nora : Hello, Noha. How are you ?

Noha : Well, I'm not fine.

Nora : (1) ....?

Noha : My grandfather (2) ....

Nora : How long has he been ill ?

Noha : (3) .... for five days.

Nora : (4) ....?

Noha : He's in a hospital now.

Nora : (5) ....?

Noha : Yes, you can visit him. It's kind of you.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The exam .... will be put on the noticeboard.
   a) events b) causes c) results d) reasons
2. Scientists around the world are working to .... a cure for most diseases.
   a) introduce b) explain c) discover d) train
3. I went to a special .... for deaf children.
   a) school b) market c) library d) café
4. They left him .... in the house and went out.
   a) alone b) special c) naughty d) clever
5. .... you ever been to New York ?
   a) Are b) Were c) Did d) Have
6. .... the football match on TV last night ?
   a) Were you seeing b) Do you see c) Did you see d) Have you seen

3) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:-

1- We left the park when it started to rain. (We have)

2- I haven't cut my hair since I left school. (I last)

3- My father bought his car 3 years ago. (since)

4- Mazin has studied English since 2014. (ago)

November Monthly Practice (1) Based on Units (3&4)

1) Choose the correct answer to complete the following dialogue :-

Reem and Aya are at the club.

Reem : Hi, Aya. Great to see you here in the club.

Aya : (1) (**Hello! – Fine!)** , Reem. I usually come here. It's the first time to see you here.

Reem : Yes, I have just joined this club.

Aya : (2) (**Do you join a club before – Have you joined a club before**) ?

Reem : No, I haven't joined a club before.

Aya : (3) (**I like – I don't like**) sports, so I have joined many clubs.

Reem : (4) (**When have you joined this club – How long have you joined the club**) ?

Aya : I have joined this club for three years.

Reem : (5) (**Are there any sports to play – Were there any sports to play**) ?

Aya : Yes, there are some sports to play.

---

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1- You see someone for the first time. Greet him / her.

(**How are you ? – Pleased to meet you.**)

2- You are asked when your father was born.

(**My father was born in 1970 – My father was born in Tanta.**)

3- You introduce your friend to your uncle.

(**This is my friend Nader. – This is my uncle Nader**.)

---

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

Mr. Saeed is a teacher of English. He works hard to make his small family happy. One day, his daughter Hanan asked him to bring her a new mobile as her old one was broken and it didn't have a good camera. He decided to buy the mobile and present it to his daughter on her birthday. He prepared the money needed. One his way to the shop, he met an old lady who asked him to help her as she was in need of money for her sick husband. Mr. Saeed was puzzled and he thought long and hard. When he went home that night, he told his family what had happened. His daughter wasn't sad that she wouldn't have a new mobile. The whole family spent a wonderful night with their kind-hearted father.

1- What did Hanan aske her father to do ?

a) To bring her a new dress.
b) To bring her a new mobile.
c) To bring her a new computer.
d) To bring her a new camera.

2- Why did the old woman need money ?

a) For her sick son.
b) For her sick daughter.
c) For her sick cousin.
d) For her sick husband.

3- Was Mr. Saeed's daughter sad ?

a) Yes, she was.
b) No, she wasn't.
c) May be
d) We don't know

4- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) money
b) the old mobile
c) the new mobile
d) the camera

5- Mr. Saeed ....

a) bought the mobile
b) was sick
c) helped the old woman
d) broke the mobile

6- Mr. Saeed is a/an .... person.

a) unkind
b) cruel
c) unfriendly
d) kind

---

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I look proudly at what I have ....

a) played
b) introduced
c) achieved
d) followed

2. They .... to a new house to be nearer the school.

a) saw
b) went
c) moved
d) described

3. It was sunny, so we were surprised by the .... of the forest.

a) quietness
b) darkness
c) quiet
d) dark

4. We hope that the country's .... will improve life in many villages.

a) community
b) festival
c) initiative
d) centre

5. There are fewer shopping centres in the .... of the country.

A) initiative
b) facilities
c) public services
d) rural areas

6. Ahmed is not at school today because he is ....

a) kindness
b) illness
c) ill
d) kind

7. I always .... my friends to play chess with me. It's a great game.

a) offer
b) pour
c) encourage
d) pull

8. Volunteers .... flowers in the park.

a) going to plant
b) plants
c) are planted
d) are planting

9. Her cousin .... her some buildings in London on their phone.

a) showed
b) has shown
c) showing
d) shows

10. Nawal .... an English teacher, but she's not now.

a) is   b) has been   c) was   d) was being

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Has Lina ever .... (seen – saw) that film ?

2- I was .... (amazed – amazing) by the number of people who came to the festival.

3- Mona thought that Mayar was ill so she was .... (surprised – surprising) to see her at school.

6) Read the sentences, then choose the answers that give the same meaning :-

1- This is my first visit to Paris. (never)

- I have never visited Paris.
- I haven't never visited Paris.

2- My father has decided to visit Hurghada next year. (going to)

- My father isn't going to visit Hurghada next year.
- My father is going to visit Hurghada next year.

3- I'm getting bored with that film. (That film)

- That film is boring.
- That film is bored.

November Monthly Practice (2) based on Units (3&4)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Hanaa introduces her new frined to Hayam.

Hanaa : Hello, Hayam. How are things ?

Hayam : (1) ....

Hanaa : I'd like you to meet our new friend, Sawsan.

Hayam : Oh, (2) .... !

Hanaa : Nice to meet you, too.

Hayam : (3) .... next weekend ?

Hanaa : We are going to visit Al – Azhar Park.

Sawsan : (4) .... ?

Hanaa : Let's meet at 8 am before it's hot.

Hayam : That (5) ....

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1- You ask your friend if they have any facilities at their school.

....

2- You introduce your new friend to your father.

....

3- You ask your parents how long they have been married.

....

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

Community projects in Egypt are a great way to make a positive development. The best community projects involve working alongside the locals to build some badly needed resources for a local community.

Members are usually asked to donate or collect money to help cover the materials and then donate their time to actually help in the development.

Injaz is one of the most successful projects working on developing education and work among Egyptians young people.

For over a **decade**, Injaz has worked on developing work and its skills among Egypt's youth and partnering with business and educational institutions to develop public school courses to help build students' skills and match their abilities with the current job market.

It delivers many programs, mainly the Work Readiness Program and the Financial Literacy Program and many other programs. As of today, it has helped 700,000 students across the country and has encouraged many young people to start their own projects.

1- What should the best community projects have ?

....

2- What is the main goal of Injaz ?

....

3- Give example of the programs that Injaz delivers.

....

4- Members of community projects donate .... to help in the development.

a) money b) time c) a & c d) neither a nor b

5- Injaz has helped .... students across the country.

a) 10 million b) 100 million c) 700,000 d) 7,000,000

6- The underlined word "decade" means .... years.

a) ten b) twenty c) fifty d) a hundred

---

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Samir closed his diary after writing about that day's ....

a) events b) profiles c) communities d) charities

2. The .... shows that women live longer than men.

a) experiment b) exam c) test d) survey

3. .... mean services, such as electricity or water, to help the members of a community.

a) Private services b) Public services

c) Special services d) Community service

4. I volunteered to help clean the .... from the walls of the museum.

a) profile b) calligraphy c) graffiti d) handwriting

5. Twelve people of us have .... camels.

a) flown b) swum c) snorkelled d) ridden

6. You shouldn't .... everything you hear until you make sure.

a) believe b) behave c) follow d) start

7. To .... is to become part of a club.

a) behave b) hide c) join d) follow

8. The town .... a new sports centre.

a) is building b) building c) is built d) going to build

9. Have you .... drunk green tea?

a) since b) for c) ever d) never

10. I .... my hand on a piece of glass. It really hurts.

a) cut b) 've cut c) was cutting d) cutting

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- The Egyptian football team beat Brazil 3-0 which was a .... (surprise) result !

2- How long have you .... (know) your best friend ?

3- I .... (see) a great film yesterday.

6) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- Volunteers have decided to clean up the park at 9 am. (going to)

....

2- I am interested in that book. (That book is)

....

3- He started playing football three years ago. (for)

....

7) Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :-

" A character you liked in a story "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Unit (5) Lessons (1&2)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Mohsen has an interview for a new job.

Abdullah : You look very smart. Why all that ?

Mohsen : Because I have an interview for a new job.

Abdullah : (1) ....?

Mohsen : Yes, I finished my university last year.

Abdullah : (2) .... thought of travelling to another country ?

Mohsen : No, I haven't. I want to find a job in my beloved country.

Abdullah : I think (3) .... to find job nowadays.

Mohsen : Not really! But you should have new skills and technology.

Abdullah : (4) .... it's a challenge to get a good job.

Mohsen : But (5) .... try and try. Never give up !

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Every hospital is ready for health ....

a) events b) occasions c) situations d) emergencies

2. Let's work together as a ....

a) team b) company c) home d) person

3. Who .... that beautiful building ? He's really smart.

a) introduced b) designed c) paid d) won

4. He seems to dislike any .... of exercise.

a) from b) firm c) farm d) form

5. When I last saw her, she .... to join her family in the USA.

a) decides b) decided c) deciding d) 's decided

6. The doctor .... He is waiting for you in the next room.

a) has come b) comes c) is coming d) came

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- We went to the park last Friday. (haven't gone)

2- He has travelled for ten years. (since)

3- Maha hasn't watched TV for three days. (last)

4- Did you see a lion before ? (ever)

Lessons (3&4) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Aya and Rami are talking about the school tournament.

Aya : Hi, Rami. Will you take part in the school tournament ?

Rami : I haven't decided yet. (1) .... I won't do well.

Aya : Afraid! (2) ....?

Rami : Yes, I have already been in a tournament.

Aya : (3) ....?

Rami : I took part in a handball competition.

Aya : (4) .... win a medal ?

Rami : Yes, we were the first and won a medal.

Aya : You shouldn't be afraid and go ahead.

Rami : OK, (5) .... again in the same tournament I took part in before.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Winning the championship is a great ....

a) achievement b) environment c) development d) experiment

2. The .... of the last matches will play each other for the third place.

a) goals b) champions c) winners d) losers

3. He wore his best clothes to the .... He hopes to get the job.

a) station b) interview c) library d) café

4. .... is her favourite subject. She likes dealing with big numbers.

a) History b) Art c) Mathematics d) Science

5. Have you finished your homework......................?

a) yet b) already c) for d) since

6. What's the most interesting city you have .... visited ?

a) ever b) for c) yet d) never

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- Did you finish eating breakfast ? (yet)

2- She won't see the film with us. (She has)

3- My sister has already arrived home. (an hour ago)

4- The children visited the zoo. (already)

Lessons (5&6) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Basmala and Batoul are talking about the short story competition.

Basmala : Hello, Batoul. You look really happy.

Batoul : Hi, Basmala. I have great news.

Basmala : Really ? (1) ....?

Batoul : I entered the short story competition.

Basmala : That's great news! Was that the competition you won last year ?

Batoul : (2) .... I came second.

Basmala : I knew (3) ....

Batoul : I hope (4) ....

Basmala : I'm sure you will do it.

Batoul : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Another word for a champion is a ....

   a) team b) spectator c) loser d) winner

2. .... are the people who watch sport at a stadium.

   a) Teams b) Competitions c) Winners d) Spectators

3. I've .... an award for my last short story.

   a) won b) earned c) made d) done

4. She learnt how to look after the environment and Egypt's ....

   a) international b) society c) culture d) school

5. She has .... Cairo University.

   a) join b) joins c) joined d) joining

6. They have already .... Cairo by night.

   a) see b) seen c) saw d) seeing

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- She has already cleaned her room. (yesterday)

2- I did my homework. (already)

3- I don't want to watch that film. (I have)

4- My mother hasn't gone to the supermarket since last Sunday. (went)

Unit (6) Lessons (1&2) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Yamin is upset because his friend Tamer didn't keep his secret.

Mazin : Hello, Yamin. You look upset. What's wrong ?

Yamin : I have a problem with my friend Tamer.

Mazin : (1) ....?

Yamin : I told him a secret, but he told his mother about it.

Mazin : (2) ....?

Yamin : I failed the exam and I didn't tell my parents.

Mazin : (3) .... tell your parents about everything. They might help you with your problems.

Yamin : (4) .... now ?

Mazin : You should listen to your friend's mother. She might help you.

Yamin : (5) .... I'll follow your advice.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. It is important to develop study ....

a) sales b) scales c) skills d) skulls

2. I try to .... going to supermarkets on Saturdays. They're always so busy.

a) show b) avoid c) visit d) protect

3. I don't like going out .... at night.

a) lonely b) alone c) loan d) only

4. Both my daughters are in their .... They are twelve and fourteen.

a) tunes b) tons c) tens d) teens

5. I can't go to the park because I .... see my doctor.

a) must b) had to c) don't have to d) mustn't

6. A : What does she .... to do at the weekend ? B : She doesn't have to get up early.

a) doesn't have b) don't have c) don't have to d) not has

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- It is necessary for her to finish the project on time. (has to)

2- It's against the law to park here. (mustn't)

3- You don't have to do the dishes today. We can leave them for tomorrow. (necessary)

4- It's important to help her because she has a lot of problems. (must)

Lessons (3&4) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Samia and Dalia are talking about the last weekend.

Samia : Hi, Dalia. Did you have a good weekend ?

Dalia : No, (1) .... My parents decided to go out for a meal.

Samia : (2) .... next ?

Dalia : I had to stay at home and look after Dodi.

Samia : (3) .... ?

Dalia : My little sister, Dina.

Samia : I never knew, (4) .... !

Dalia : Listen, if you had a sister like her, you'd keep quiet and about it too !

Samia : (5) .... ?

Dalia : Because mum and dad wanted to spend a night together.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. The weather will continue to .... over the weekend. We will go out then.

a) produce b) introduce c) improve d) encourage

2. I read a .... of her book in the local newspaper.

a) preview b) view c) revision d) review

3. I've .... friends with Waleed for twenty years.

a) spent b) stayed c) been d) done

4. She's a great .... of historical novels. She buys many books.

a) robber b) publisher c) reader d) writer

5. We .... walk to the museum because there was a bus.

a) weren't able to b) didn't have to c) could d) had to

6. Tarek .... go to the dentist because his teeth hurt.

a) had to b) was able to c) couldn't d) didn't have to

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- I was able to ride a bike at the age of ten. (could)

2- It was not important to get up early yesterday. It was a holiday. (I didn't)

3- Her grandmother could speak both English and Spanish when she was young. (able to)

4- It was very windy, so planes weren't able to leave the airport. (couldn't)

Lessons (5&6) Quiz

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Magdy is feeling sad because he got low marks in his exams.

Magdy : I had a terrible day at school.

Medhat : (1) .... ?

Magdy : It was my exams.

Medhat : It might help to talk about it, you know.

Magdy : We had the exams results. (2) ....!

Medhat : (3) .... you feel very sad.

Magdy : They were so difficult.

Medhat : (4) .... give me an example of what you mean ?

Magdy : Well, I didn't understand what they wanted me to write.

Medhat : (5) .... you are unhappy about it.

---

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. I decide to .... my cousins next Friday. We're going to the park.

a) ask for b) come across c) decide to d) meet up with

2. It's .... to me that Ahmed is very good at running. He is so fast !

a) hard b) easy c) clear d) clean

3. Heba feels .... because she has an important exam tomorrow.

a) amazed b) upset c) anxious d) embarrassed

4. Taha lives a long way from the school. It takes an hour for him to .... home.

a) get b) go to c) get to d) arrives

5. He .... to arrive at the party on time, even after missing the train, so he was very pleased.

a) could b) wasn't able to c) was able d) couldn't

6. I .... drive a car until I was 34.

a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

---

3) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- He couldn't find his bag yesterday. (wasn't)

2- It was necessary to revise for your exams. (had to)

3- It's necessary to study hard for your exams. (must)

4- When I was 15, I was able to ride a motorbike. (could)

December Monthly Practice (1) Based on (Units 5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer to complete the following dialogue :-

Soliman tells Reda about the science competition.

Reda : Hi, Soliman. How are you ?

Soliman : Hello, Reda. 1) (I'm fine – I'm worried).

Reda : You look happy ? (2) (Why – When) ?

Soliman : Because my father bought me a new laptop.

Reda : Really ? 3) (When did he buy it – Where did he buy it) ?

Soliman : He bought it yesterday.

Reda : Why did he buy it for you ?

Soliman : (4) (Because I lost the competition – Because I won the competition).

Reda : Which competition ?

Soliman : (5) (The music competition – The sport competition).

Reda : I'm really happy for you. You are a good musician.

---

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1- Your friend has come first at the music competition.

(Well done ! – Oh dear !)

2- You ask your friend to tell you about his / her worries.

(Can you tell me why you are worried ? – Can you tell me why you are happy ?)

3- You ask your teacher how long he/she has worked at that school.

- How often have you worked at that school ?

- How long have you worked at that school ?

---

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

"Good news, good news," My mother repeated happily. "Your father agreed to satisfy the wish of everyone of you."

That made me **glad** as I will get the laptop I always dreamt of. As a result, this will enable me to do my researches during my study at the university. My elder brother, Kamal, will have a mobile phone as he is so fond of making calls, especially during his many travels all the year round. His job as a tour guide makes him stay outside home for days and sometimes for weeks. As for my sister, Mona, she wishes to have a digital camera because her hobby is photography. She hopes my dad will bring **it**, to be able to make a video of the wedding of our cousin. I think dad will pay much for these things, but he is happy and proud of us, because we are successful.

1- What does Mona wish to have ?

a) A new mobile. b) A digital camera.

c) A lot of money. d) Some clothes.

2- Why do you think dad is happy ?

a) Because they are successful. b) Because they failed.

c) Because they are angry. d) Because they are cute.

3- What's Mona's favourite hobby ?

a) Painting. b) Singing. c) Photography. d) Drawing

4- The underlined word "it" refers to the ....

a) wedding b) hobby c) camera d) mobile

5- The underlined word "glad" means ....

a) easy b) happy c) angry d) difficult

6- Kamal will have a ....

a) mobile phone b) laptop c) digital camera d) tablet

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. A/An .... is a sports event.

a) spectator b) tournament c) champion d) award

2. Our school has a chess .... every year. A lot of people want to enter.

a) pandemic b) competitor c) race d) competition

3. "A .... " is the story of a person's life, and is written by someone else.

a) creative b) strong c) biography d) brave

4. You must tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to .... you online.

a) talk b) cyberbully c) think d) brainstorm

5. What you feel, such as happy, upset, etc. are your ....

a) thoughts b) feelings c) symbols d) expressions

6. The unkind text messages made her feel really ....

a) noisy b) ugly c) upset d) positive

7. You should know the password before you can .... that computer.

a) use b) log c) plug d) charge

8. Engineers have .... designed the bridge, but we haven't finished it yet.

a) already b) yet c) ever d) never

9. Hassan has talked to three schools about pollution, but he hasn't given his speech to business ....

a) never b) already c) ever d) yet

10. Manar .... to get up early to catch the bus.

a) have b) has c) wasn't d) haven't

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1) Haytham .... (created – has created) an app already.

2) We've lived here .... (for – since) ten years.

3) You .... (doesn't have to – don't have to) get up early tomorrow. It's a holiday.

6) Read the sentences, then choose the answer that give the same meaning :-

1- We travelled to Aswan last Monday. (have travelled)

- We have travelled to Aswan for last Monday.
- We have travelled to Aswan since last Monday.

2- He has lived here for fifteen years. (since)

- He has lived here since 2007.
- He has lived here since 2017.

3- It is not necessary for you to water the plants. I've watered them already. (don't have to)

- You don't have to water the plants.
- You don't have to watering the plants.

December Monthly Practice (1) Based on (Units 5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer to complete the following dialogue :-

Emad is telling Ashraf about his new job.

Emda : Hello, Ashraf. How are you ?

Ashraf : I'm fine. Where are you going ?

Emad : (1) ....

Ashraf : To your work! (2) ....?

Emad : Yes, I found work two months ago.

Ashraf : (3) ....?

Emad : I work for a company that produces furniture.

Ashraf : (4) ....?

Emad : It's in downtown.

Ashraf : (5) .... you good luck.

2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations :-

1- You want to know why your friend went to university.

....

2- You ask your friend if he/she has ever watched a tournament.

....

3- you ask your friend to tell you his/her problem.

....

3) Read the following, then answer the questions :-

Today, many women and young girls break free of the status situation and prove themselves as successful people. The number of Egyptian women that are starting up **their** own businesses is increasing day after another. With their great hard work they have given us a reason to keep moving forward, especially those who built their empire from nothing and managed to rise with it to international fame.

Azza Fahmy, Egypt's pioneer in culture jewellery, is the true definition of "every necklace has a story". Every piece of jewellery she crafts has a rich heritage behind it. Her work is well established internationally and has caused massive amount of popularity, especially among celebrities and public figures such as Raya Abi Rached, Nicole Scherzinger and Rihanna.

The hard work and amount of effort made to build her empire is the most astonishing, "So I tied my hair back, put on my overalls and spent my days in a workshop full of men learning the tricks of the jewellery making trade," she said.

1- Give a title to the text. ....

2- What kind of work does Azza Fahmy work in ?

....

3- In your opinion, what made Azza Fahmy a great business person ?

....

4- The .... encouraged Azza to be a great business person.

a) great effort b) hard work c) workshop d) a and b

5- The number of Egyptian women that are starting up their own businesses is ....

a) increasing b) decreasing c) reducing d) cutting down

6- The underlined pronoun "**their**" refers to ....

a) girls b) women c) persons d) none of the above

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. A .... travels to meetings around the world.

a) campaigner b) programmer c) scientist d) business person

2. People have travelled through .... to the moon.

a) cloud b) sun c) start d) space

3. Will you .... us for coffee ?

a) bring b) go c) join d) come

4. Tourists like to stay at luxury ....

a) parks b) exhibitions c) museums d) hotels

5. .... life is the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people.

a) Private b) Special c) Healthy d) Social

6. If you feel ...., you have no friends with you.

a) lonely b) alone c) upset d) anxious

7. Although Reem's brother is only five, Reem always .... him in her games.

a) offers b) includes c) introduces d) reduces

8. Tarek is worried because he .... do badly in his exams.

a) must b) has to c) might d) should

9. The baker's was closed, but we .... buy some bread from the shop next door.

a) could b) couldn't c) wasn't able d) was able

10. He .... today's car race.

a) won b) has won c) winning d) win

---

5) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- I have .... (yet) seen that play.

2- Sami .... (pass) his exams last week.

3- Although I woke up 40 minutes late, I .... (able / get) to work on time.

---

6) Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :-

1- People in a few schools have used the app already. (yet)

....

2- I couldn't ride my brother's bike. (wasn't)

....

3- It was necessary for her to study for her exams. (had to)

....

7) Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on :-

" A biography of your best friend "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

---

1) Reading Corner:

1- Why do you think Samar's team won the competition ?

- Because they worked hard.

2- What has Samar Abdelfattah been interested in ?

- ....

3- What does the pronoun "<u>They</u>" in the third paragraph refer to ?

- ....

1- How many competitors were there in the handball tournament in Egypt ?

- There were over 600 competitors from 32 countries.

2- Why do you think the contest in Egypt has been fantastic ?

- ....

3- What is the main idea of the passage ?

- ....

1- Why do you think Nada Zaher started a company ?

- To help more international athletes by connecting them with universities in the USA and helping them to find to find scholarships.

2- Where is Nada from ?

- ....

3- The word "returned" in the passage means ....

a) came back b) pretended c) connected d) swept

2) Writing Corner

1. My cousin Gamal is a business person. إبن عمى جمال هو رجل أعمال .

2. He got a job with a big company in Cairo. حصل على وظيفة لدى شركة كبيرة فى القاهرة

3. He's worked there for three years. لقد عمل هناك لمدة ثلاث سنوات.

4. He's travelled to lots of interesting places. لقد سافر إلى العديد من الأماكن الشيقة.

5. Last year, he went to Nigeria and Brazil. ذهب إلى نيجيريا والبرازيل العام الماضى.

---

1. Aya has always loved writing stories and poems. آية كانة دائماً تحب كتابة القصص والقصائد الشعرية.

2. When she was six, she wrote a book of stories. عندما كانت فى السادسة من عمرها كتبت كتاب قصصى.

3. She won a prize for a poem she wrote. فازت بجائزة لقصيدة كتبتها.

4. She really likes to be creative. إنها حقاً تريد أن تكون مُبدعة.

5. Her dream is to create an app to help children learn. حلمها هو أن تبتكر تطبيق ليساعد فى تعليم الأطفال.

---

1. Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandria in 2003.

ولدت فاطمة على البنا فى مدينة الإسكندرية فى عام ٢٠٠٣.

2. When she was a child, she loved learning about science.

عندما كانت طفلة، كانت تحب تعلم العلوم.

3. She wanted to be a great scientist. أرادت أن تصبح عالمة عظيمة.

4. After she finished preparatory school, she started at the Science, Technology, Engineering and Maths school in Alexandria.

بعد إنتهائها من الدراسة فى المرحلة الإعدادية بدأت الدراسة بمدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضة فى مدينة الإسكندرية.

5. She came first in Egypt and NASA International Space Apps Challenge.

حصلت على المركز الأول فى مصر فى مسابقة "تحدى تطبيقات الفضاء" الدولية من وكالة ناسا.

6. She found a natural way for villages to clean dirty water.

لقد وجدت طريقة طبيعية للقرى لتنظيف المياه الغير نظيفة.

Building Sentences / Read and complete :-

(yesterday – be – ago – manager – passed)

1- Samy .... his exams last week.

2- Adel is the .... of the company.

3- She wanted to .... a sports champion.

4- How .... has she been in Cairo ?

5- He won a prize three years ....

(found – yet – has – already – since – fantastic)

1- She hasn't finished her book ....

2- They have .... won the match.

3- He .... already bought a new car.

4- Aya wrote a .... poem.

5- The boys haven't .... their lost bags.

(already – did – yet – scholarship – for – repaired)

1- I've .... the chair that was broken.

2- He has got a .... to a university in Italy.

3- The boy has .... watered the plants.

4- They haven't finished their homework ....

5- She .... well in the final exam.

C. Practise writing by yourself :-

- Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Someone in your family with an interesting job"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

"Things you have done in your life"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

" A biography about Fatma El-Banna "

....
....
....
....
....
....

3. Speaking Corner

- Asking and answering questions about jobs : لتوجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الوظائف.

Question	Answers
1. Which university did you study at ?	- I studied at ....
2. What is your job ?	- I'm ....
3. Why are you interested in it ?	- Because I like ....
4. When did you start it ?	- I started in ....
5. How long have you had the job ?	- I have ....

- Asking and answering questions about sports tournaments: لتوجيه أسئله والرد عليها عن المسابقات الرياضية

Question	Answers
1. What was the last sports tournaments you watched in a stadium or on TV ?	- I watched the Olympic Games in Tokyo on TV.
2. Who won ?	- The USA won 39 gold medals in these Olympic Games.
3. Did you enjoy it ? Why ?	- Yes, it was exciting when there were competitors from Egypt.

- Responding to good news : للرد على الأخبار الجيدة

Question	Answers
1. The football team won 2-0 !	- They did really well.
2. He got 100% in his exam.	- What an amazing achievement !
3. Merna is getting married !	- I'm really happy for her.
4. Hala has a place at a top university.	- I knew she would do well. She worked really hard.
5. I've repaired the broken chair.	- Great job. Well done!

Talking about jobs and sports tournaments :- للحديث عن الوظائف والمسابقات الرياضية

Question	Answers
1. Why would you like to be a/an ...... الوظيفة ?	- As I like ....
2. When did you start it ?	- .... years ago.
3. Who won the final match in the contest ?	- .... team won the match.

The most important Vocabulary

(creative person – manager – goals – achieve – organisers – bubble – champion – campaigner – computer programmer – company – equipment – create an app – science project)
(sports champion – The Middle East – space technology – give speeches – astronauts – education – disabled people – challenges)

Expressions & Structures

- He has travelled to lots of interesting places.
- I'd like to be a ....
- He is interested in ....
- He wanted to be a/an ....
- His dream is to ....

Brainstorming: *شويه أسئلة لتهيئة الطلاب قبل شرح دروس الوحده*

- What's your favourite sports ?
- What does a creative person do ?
- What do the doctors do to help Egypt achieve this big dream ?
- What skills do you need for this job ?

Language

1. There were 600 teams in the contest. — الفعل يكون فى زمن الماضى البسيط (be)

2. Have you written the letter yet ? — تستخدم **yet** مع الجملة الإستفهامية فى زمن المضارع التام.

3. She has already cooked the meal. — تستخدم **already** مع الجملة المثبتة فى زمن المضارع التام.

4. Mum has swept the floor already. — يمكن أن توضع **already** فى أخر الجملة المثبتة فى زمن المضارع التام.

5. I have visited the Egyptian Museum. — جملة مثبت فى زمن المضارع التام.

6. Did you help your friend yesterday ? — يكون الفعل فى المصدر عند السؤال بـ **did**

A paragraph / An email on

Someone's job / A creative person / A sports tournament / The World Men's Handball Championship in Egypt.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Unit (6) What's wrong ?

Lessons (1&2)

teenager = teen (n)	مراهق	social life (n)	الحياة الإجتماعية
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى	anxious (adj)	قلق – متوتر
achievements (n)	إنجازات	embarrassed (adj)	مُحرج
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الإلكترونى	upset (adj)	متضايق – منزعج
abilities (n)	قدرات	support (ed) (v), (n)	يدعم – يُساند – دعم / مساندة
billion (n)	بليون (ألف مليون)	secret (n)	سر
appearance (n)	المظهر الخارجى	lonely (adj)	منعزل – وحيد
height (n)	طول القامة – إرتفاع	music club (n)	نادى الموسيقى
common (adj)	شائع – منتشر	report (ed) (v) (n)	يُخبر / يُبلغ عن / تقرير
importance (n)	أهمية	helpful (adj)	مساعد – مفيد
mental health (n)	الصحة والسلامة العقلية	share (d) (v)	يُشارك
art club (n)	نادى الفنون	experiences (n)	تجارب – خبرات
school work (n)	العمل المدرسى	important (adj)	هام
website (n)	موقع إلكترونى	join (d) (v)	ينضم – يلتحق بـ
nearly (adv)	تقريباً	language club (n)	نادى اللغات
study (n)	دراسة	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح
fail (ed) (v)	يفشل / يرسب	anyone (pronoun)	أى شخص
speaking (n)	التحدث	behaviour (n)	سلوك
British (adj)	بريطانى	choice (n)	إختيار
offer (ed) (v), (n)	يعرض / يقدم / عرض	somebody (pronoun)	شخص ما
nobody (pro)	لا أحد	opinions (b)	أراء

Lessons (3&4)

blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	realise (v)	يُدرك
part (n)	جزء	hope (d) (v)	يأمل
certain (adj)	محدد – معين	luckily (adv)	لحسن الحظ
closed = locked (adj)	مغلق	revise (d) (v)	يُراجع
telephone (d) (v)	يتصل تليفونياً	waterfall (n)	شلال
life jacket (n)	سترة النجاة	engine (n)	مُحرك
culture (n)	ثقافة	facts (n)	حقائق
deelply (adv)	بشدة – بعمق	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد

afterwards (adv)	بعدئذ – في ما بعد	breathing (n)	عملية التنفس
mind (n)	عقل	health (n)	صحة

Lessons (5&6)

listener (n)	مستمع	meet up with (v)	يلتقى / يتقابل مع
interrupt (v)	يُقاطع الكلام	filter (n)	فلتر (معدل الصور)
cope (d) with (phr.v)	يتعامل مع – يتغلب على	clear (adj)	صافى - واضح
understanding (n)	تفاهم	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
weather (n)	الطقس	clearly (adv)	بوضوح
mind (ed) (v) , (n)	يُمانع – يُعارض – عقل	tip (n)	نصيحة
ability (n)	القدرة	brainstorm (ed) (v)	يقوم بالعصف الذهنى
digital (adj)	رقمى	mirror (n)	مرآه
word cloud (n)	سحابة الكلمات	diary (n)	مفكرة يومية
poster (n)	مُلصق	contact (ed) (v)	يتواصل – يتصل بـ
display (ed) (v)	يعرض – يقدم	instead (adv)	بدلاً من

Conjugation of Irregular verbs تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المضارع	**Past الماضى**	**P.P. التصريف الثالث**
spread ينتشر	spread	spread
spend يقضى	spent	spent
hurt يؤذى – يجرح – يؤلم	hurt	hurt
give يعطى	gave	given
break يكسر	broke	broken
mean يعنى – يقصد	meant	meant
meet up يلتقى – يُقابل	met up	met up

Study these definitions

achievement	something important that you have done
social life	the time you spend enjoying yourself with other people
appearance	the way that someone or something looks
billion	a thousand million (1,000,000,000)
support	help and encourage someone
mental health	shows the health of your mind or how happy you are
breathe	take air in and out of your body
relax	become comfortable and less worried
mindful	being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment
feelings	what you feel, such as happy, upset, etc.
mindfulness	being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feelings and what is around you at the moment

empathy	this means showing someone that you understand how they feel.

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

Verb	Collocation	Meaning
make	sure	يتأكد
	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
	questions	يُكون أسئلة
have	a problem	لديه مشكلة
	fiends	لديه أصدقاء
	a haircut	يحصل على قصه شعر
	an opionion	لديه رأى
	similar interests	لديه إهتمامات متشابهة
use	a computer	يستخدم الحاسب الآلى
	technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا

Verb	Collocation	Meaning
give	an example	يقدم مثال
	advice	يقدم نصيحة
cope with	a problem	يتعامل مع مشكلة
show	empmathy	يُظهر التعاطف
	understanding	يُظهر التفاهم

Verb	Collocation	Meaning	Verb	Collocation	Meaning
keep	secrets	يحفظ الأسرار	tell	a secret	يخبر سر
join	a club	ينضم لنادى	get	anxious	يقلق / يشعر بالقلق
spend	time	يقضى وقت	do	a test	يؤدى إختبار
have	a test	لديه إختبار	choose	friends	يختارأصدقائه
go	home	يذهب للمنزل	show	empathy	يُظهر التعاطف
play	a sport	يمارس رياضة	feel	better	يشعر بتحسن
	a game	يلعب مباراة	do	better	يؤدى أداء جيداً

Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
in the UK	فى المملكة المتحدة	worry about	يقلق حيال / بشأن
embarrassed about	مُحرج بسبب	fail a test	يرسب فى إختبار
feel bad about	يشعر بالسوء بشأن	offer to + inf.	يعرض أن
anxious about	قلق بشأن	unhappy with	حزين بـ
feel upset	يشعر بالضيق	around 63%	حوال ٦٣%
in their daily lives	فى حياتهم اليومية	for me	بالنسبة لى
on the other hand	على الجانب الآخر	have no choice	ليس لديه إختيار
share experiences	يُشارك التجارب والخبرات	in a positive way	بطريقة إيجابية
support each other	ندعم بعضنا البعض	change behaviour	يُغير سلوك
spread positive messages	ينشر رسائل إيجابية	feel about	يشعر نحو
look after	يعتنى بـ	this sort of information	هذا النوع من المعلومات
use technology	يستخدم التكنولوجيا	belong to	ينتمى إلى
(be) positive for	يكون إيجابى بشأن	feel positively about	يشعر بالإيجابية نحو
(be) negative for	يكون سلبى بشأن	feel lonely	يشعر بالوحدة

share with	يشارك مع	think deelply	يفكر بتمعن
part of	جزء من	stop ... from ...	يمنع – يتوقف ... عن ...
on social media	فى وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى	feel better	يشعر بتحسن
include .... in	يضمن / يتضمن ... فى	be frineds with	يكون على صداقة مع
hurt badly	يؤلم بشدة	stay up late	يسهر حتى وقت متأخر
able to	قادر على	go into	يدخل
kind to	عطوف على	say sorry to	يعتذر لـ
revise for	يراجع لـ ...	write an unkind comment about	يكتب تعليقات غير طيبة عن
sorry about	حزين على	leave the airport	يغادر المطار
breathe in and out slowly	يشهق ويزفر ببطئ	tell me what to do	إخبرنى ماذا أفعل
tell .... about	يُخبر.. عن	unhappy about	حزين بشأن
talk about	يتحدث عن	in the mirror	فى المرآة
without interrupting me	دون مقاطعتى	do more good work	يعمل مزيد من العمل الجيد
It is clear to me that ...	إنه من الواضح بالنسبة لى أن..	look so good	يبدو جذاب جداً
make coffee for	يُعد / يصنع القهوة لـ	do something else	يعمل شئ أخر
make you feel ...	يجعلك تشعر ..	agree on	يتفق على
(have) a terrible day	يقضى يوماً سيئ	first of all	أولاً / قبل كل شئ
go on	يستمر	help with	يساعد فى
find it difficult to + inf.	يجد صعوبة أن ..		

Vocabulary Study :- Synonyms and Antonyms المترادفات والمتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف لها (نفس المعنى)	Antonym / opposite المضاد للكلمة
kind طيب	friendly / gentle / good	unkind
similar متشابه	like	different
well بطريقة جيدة	fully	badly
clear واضح – صافى	plain – apparent	hidden / unclear خفى / غير واضح
certain متأكد	sure	uncertain / unsure
anxious = worried قلق-مشغول البال	nservous – upset – disturbed	quiet / peaceful / calm
embarrassed مُحرج – خجلان	uncomfortable – uneasy	confident واثق من نفسه
quickly بسرعة	fast	slowly
future المستقبل	later-planned	past الماضى
after بعد	next	before
comfortable مستريح	relaxed	upset مضايق – مضطرب
mindful منتبه – يقظ	aware	unaware / mindless غافل-غيرواع
closed مغلق	locked	opened
ask يسأل	question / inquire	tell / answer يخبر / يجيب
older أكبر سناً	elder	younger أصغر سناً

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c o r d :-

1. I'm embarrassed to go out and see my friends. The word "embarrassed" can be replaced by " .... ".

a) easy b) calm c) uncomfortable d) confident

2. There isn't anybody in the meeting. .... came to the meeting.

a) Anybody b) Nobody c) Somebody d) Something

3. The synonym of the word .... is apparaent.

a) kind b) similar c) anxious d) clear

4. The opposite of "certain" is "............... " .

a) unsure b) sure c) hidden d) nervous

5. Think .... before you make a decision.

a) deep b) deepness c) deeply d) deepen

6. When you are upset, this means you don't feel ....

a) uncomfort b) comfortable c) uncomfortable d) comfort

7. The antonym of "mindful" is ....

a) aware b) unaware c) careful d) relaxed

8. Whe someone is calm, this means he speaks ....

a) calm b) calmy c) calmness d) calmly

9. "............... " has the same meaning of "closed".

a) Kept b) Covered c) Opened d) Locked

10. The antonym of the word "older" is ....

a) ancient b) elder c) younger d) early

11. "Ask" and "question" have ....meaning.

a) opposite b) different c) similar d) the same

12. We turn the verb "listen" to a noun by adding "............... "

a) –er b) –ing c) –ed d) –tion

13. They may be more understanding. The word "understanding" here is a/an ....

a) verb b) adjective c) adverb d) noun

Vocabulary Lessons (1&2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. Charities .... poor people with food and clothes.

a) share b) support c) join d) upset

2. She was .... whe she dropped the phone.

a) happy b) lonely c) excited d) embarrassed

3. I get .... about exams.

a) anxious b) lost c) wet d) sleep

4. Every good thing you have done is a/an ....

a) life b) work c) achievement d) appearance

5. .... is something you try to hide.

a) Skill b) Secret c) Study d) Text

6. (WB) I've tried to .... an art club.

a) join b) go c) have d) spend

7. (WB) When you show someone that you know how he or she feels, then you show ....

a) competition b) empathy c) taste d) exam

8. (SB) You shouldn't feel bad about being tall. Your .... is a positive thing.

a) weight b) fast c) distance d) height

9. (SB) The unkid text messages made her feel really ....

a) upset b) excited c) important d) positive

10. We can ....our experience with others on social media.

a) hide b) share c) encourage d) get

11. Drinking tea is .... in Egypt.

a) helpful b) special c) secret d) common

12. Which of these is one of English language skills ?

a) Communication b) Searching c) Speaking d) Painting

13. Mostafa is poor. .... the other hand, he is so generous.

a) On b) In c) Over d) At

14. Lamees is different .... Walaa.

a) for b) from c) into d) in

15. This key .... to Farida. Give it to her.

a) owns b) brings c) belongs d) has

16. We are not similar. We .... different opions.

a) hold b) catch c) have d) carry

1. (SB) A doctor has to .... good at science subjects.

a) been b) being c) be d) to be

2. (WB) You .... say unkind things to people on social media.

a) shouldn't b) must c) had to d) have to

3. (SB) Good friends ....keep secrets.

a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) must

4. (WB) Tarek is worried because he ....do badly in his exams.

a) must b) might c) has to d) had to

5. (WB) I ....get up early tomorrow, because it is a holiday !

a) shouldn't b) don't have to c) mustn't d) has to

6. Omaima .... wear glasses because she can't see.

a) mustn't b) have to c) has to d) have

7. You .... study biology to join the Faculty of Medicine.

a) have to b) mustn't c) should d) didn't have to

8. You .... take photos here. It's forbidden.

a) have to b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't

9. Habiba has three jackets. She .... to buy another one.

a) don't have b) must c) mustn't d) doesn't have

10. Hany has a lot of work to do. He .... come home late It's probably.

a) must b) might c) should d) have to

11. Younis .... drink polluted water.

a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) mustn't

---

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- (WB) What do you .... (must) to do ?

2- (SB) They might ....(been) more understanding than you think.

3-(WB) You ....(mustn't) know the password before you can use that computer.

4- (WB) My father .... (have) to go to work at 6 a.m. for a meeting.

5- Salma has to ....(got) a passport to travel to London.

6- We ....(doesn't) have to hurry, we aren't late for school.

7- You ....(mustn't) see a doctor. You have been ill for a week.

8- You ....(must) park your car here. It's againist the law.

9- Do you have to ....(finished) your work tonight ?

10- ....(Does) Ali and Sara have to travel to Luxor ?

General Exercises on Lessons (1&2)

1) Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman is talking to his younger brother Adham who spends much time on social media

Ayman : Adham, where are you ?

Adham : (1) ………………………………………………………………… .

Ayman : (2) ……………………………………………………………………………?

Adham : I'm chatting with my friend.

Ayman : Have you done your homework ?

Adham : (3) ………………………………………………………………… .

Ayman : (4) ………………………………………………………………… ?

Adham : Because I feel upset and anxious.

Ayman : This is a formal result of spending much time on social media.

Adham : (5) ………………………………… . What should I do ?

Ayman : Using social media for half an hour every day is enough.

---

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. (WB) A/An …………. means something important that you have done.
   a) cyberbullying b) ability c) achievement d) secret
2. She often feels worried ………… exams.
   a) off b) for c) from d) about
3. Always make friends with people who have …………. interests to you.
   a) strange b) similar c) foreign d) different
4. I think this is a good flat. ……………. the other hand, it is cheap.
   a) On b) At c) In d) About
5. (SB) For me, exams are a problem. I got very ……………. about them.
   a) quiet b) relaxed c) cheerful d) anxious
6. Don't be ………… ! He didn't mean to make you angry.
   a) positive b) upset c) pleased d) happy
7. I'm …………….. about being very short although my parents said that it's okay.
   a) pleased b) excited c) embarrassed d) delighted
8. You …………. make noise at libraries. It's not allowed.
   a) must b) should c) mustn't d) shouldn't
9. You ………….. study hard before exams.
   a) should b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) need

10. You …………… stay up late. It's bad for your health.

a) don't have　　b) should　　c) must　　d) shouldn't

---

(3) Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- You ……………………… (have clean) the table. I have cleaned it.

2- You ………………………(smoke) here. It's not allowed.

3- She………………………(must) see her present. I'm not sure.

4- They ………………………(should) eat many sweets.

---

(4) (SB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(after – hand – studies – share – hate)

Today, nearly four billion people use social media in their daily lives. Some (1)……………. have found that around 63% of people report feeling upset and anxious after using social media. On the(2) ……………., social media can be helpful because we can (3)……………… experiences and support each other. People can spread positive messages this way about the importance of look (4) …………… our mental health.

(5) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" Social media in our life "

…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………

Lessons (3/4)

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. When I was ten, I was .... to swim.
   a) can   b) could   c) able   d) couldn't
2. Hala .... go to the hospital yesterday.
   a) mustn't   b) has to   c) had to   d) must
3. I .... visit Ali. It wasn't necessary.
   a) don't have to   b) didn't have to   c) doesn't have to   d) had to
4. You .... take photos here. It's forbidden.
   a) don't have to   b) have to   c) must   d) mustn't
5. I could walk when I was twon, but I .... swim.
   a) couldn't   b) could   c) can   d) can't

---

1. (SB) I .... understand the film because it was in a language I don't understand.
   a) could   b) couldn't   c) wasn't able   d) had to
2. (SB) Malak .... buy more rice because we had lots already.
   a) didn't have to   b) could   c) had to   d) wasn't able
3. (WB) Fatma .... walk to school because she hurt her leg.
   a) didn't have to   b) wasn't able to   c) could   d) had to
4. (WB) In the mountains, we .... see an amazing waterfall.
   a) were able   b) didn't have   c) could   d) was able to
5. Adel .... to ride a bike when he was young.
   a) could   b) was able   c) able to   d) couldn't
6. The boy couldn't ....his homework.
   a) did   b) do   c) done   d) does
7. .... you play basketball when you were young, Alaa ?
   a) Was   b) Could   c) Were   d) Are
8. The exam was difficult, but I .... to answer all the questions easily.
   a) could   b) wasn't able to   c) was able   d) couldn't
9. At the age of two, my sister .... ride a bike.
   a) wasn't able   b) couldn't   c) weren't able to   d) able
10. We .... walk to the museum, because there wasn't a bus.
   a) hav eto   b) had to   c) don't have to   d) was able to

---

(3) Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1. (WB) Tarek .... (have) to go to the dentist yesterday because his tooth hurt.
2. (WB) It was very windy, so planes ....(wasn't) able to leave the airport.

3. (SB) I didn't have to ....(done) what my friends suggested.

4. Yesteday, I had to .... (took) the umbrella as it was raining.

5. They .... (are) able to ride a bike when they were young.

6. She was able .... (catch) the ball.

7. The girl didn't .... (has) to do what her friend said.

8. .... (Are) your sister able to swim when she was six ?

General Exercises on Lessons (3/4)

1) Complete the following dialogue :

Youssef and Tamer are talking about being midful.

Youssef : Hello, Tamer. Why were you absent yesterday ?

Tamer : Hello, Youssef. (1) ....

Youssef : (2) ....?

Tamer : Much better, thanks.

Youssef : You missed a good lesson yesterday.

Tamer : What was it about ?

Youssef : (3) ....

Tamer : (4) ....?

Youssef : Mindfulness means being able to relax by calmly thinking about your feeling and what is around you at the moment.

Tamer : Good! How does it help us in our life and study ?

Youssef : (5) ....

---

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. She took a course to .... her English.

a) stop b) improve c) relax d) prove

2. I cannot believe you. You are ....

a) kind b) honest c) serious d) joking

3. Yesterday, I revised .... my English exam.

a) for b) on c) at d) in

4. (WB) Your ……………… health shows the health of your mind, or how happy you are.

a) natural b) mental c) special d) normal

5. (WB) To ……………… is to become comfortable and less worried.

a) shout b) study c) relax d) jump

6. ……………… means being able to think calmly about your feelings and what is around you at the moment.

a) Environment b) Cyberbullying c) Brighness d) Mindfulness

7. (WB) To take air in and out your body means to ……………… .

a) breathe b) conclude c) joke d) laugh

8. Students ……………… listen to their teachers carefully.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) need

9. I will buy some bread. You ……………… buy more.

a) don't have to b) shouldn't c) must d) have to

10. When I was ten, I ………………ride a horse alone. It was really amazing.

a) can b) can't c) could d) couldn't

(3) Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Ramez ………………………..(not able) fix the fan yesterday.

2- Omar …………………………..(must make) noise at the library.

3- Hatem …………………………..(can) swim, when he was four.

4- Could Leila …………………………..(cooks) alone when she was eleven ?

(4) (WB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(start – have – way – jacket - boat)

Last week, my uncle took me out on his boat. I had to wear a special life (1)……………… and he said I could walk carefully around the (2) ……………., but I couldn't run. We travelled a long (3) …………………, and after two hours, I wasn't able to see the beach, only the sea. Then, the engine stopped! We tried to (4)………………it, but we couldn't.

(5) Write an email of about 110 words to your friend Seif who lives in England about how to be mindful.

"Your name is Shehab and your email address is shehab15@gmail.com"
"Your friend's name is Seif and his email address is seiframzi@gmail.com"

……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………
……………………………………………………………………………………………………

Lessons (5&6)

1) Choose the correct answer :-

1. He is a good ……………. . He always listens to me carefully.
   a) speaker b) player c) listener d) fighter
2. People use ……………. to look so good in their pictures.
   a) skills b) filters c) notes d) medicines
3. You're strong. You can ……………. with any problem.
   a) find b) make c) cope d) add
4. Coronavirus is a ……………. disease.
   a) clear b) simple c) digital d) serious
5. Will you ……………. up with your friends today ?
   a) make b) meet c) wake d) get
6. (SB) Ask questions to ……………. sure you really understand the problem.
   a) give b) have c) make d) do
7. (SB) Before leaving for school, she looks at herself in the ……………. .
   a) wall b) mirror c) video games d) basin
8. (SB) How can she ……………. him to work harder ?
   a) take b) do c) know d) encourage
9. (WB) Young children are not good listeners because they often ……………. !
   a) eat b) interrupt c) encourage d) listen
10. You should think …………….before taking an important decision.
    a) clearly b) happily c) angrily d) really
11. Did you see the ……………. of the new film on the cinema door ?
    a) video b) advice c) comment d) poster
12. You should listen to your big brother's ………….. .
    a) taps b) tapes c) tips d) lips
13. Try ………… me. I'm really in a mess ! فى ورطه
    a) helping b) help c) to help d) helped

14. You can't succeed without .... hard.

a) working   b) to work   c) work   d) works

15. Do you agree .... what I say ?

a) of   b) to   c) up   d) on

16. No, thanks. I don't want rice ....

a) any more   b) some more   c) no more   d) much

General Exercises on Lessons (5&6)

1) Complete the following diaglogue :-

Maher asks his teacher, Mr. Othman how to be a good listener.

Maher : Hello, Mr. Othman. Can I ask you a questions, please ? .

Mr. Othman : Hello, Maher. (1) ....

Maher : (2) ....?

Mr. Othman : If you want to be a good listener, you shouldn't interrupt the speaker.

Maher : It's OK. I won't interrupt the speaker. (3) ....?

Mr. Othman : You should also show that you are interested in the subject.

Maher : What should I do if the speaker said something wrong ?
Can I give advice ?

Mr. Othman : (4) .... But, don't give orders.

Maher : Thanks for your time, Mr. Othman.

Mr. Othman : (5) ....

---

2) Choose the correct answer :-

1. (SB) Nobody minds when people .... mistakes!

a) do   b) make   c) take   d) gave

2. After she had the medicine, she .... better a lot.

a) had   b) got   c) gave   d) made

3. Have you finished or you will .... something else ?

a) do   b) go   c) talk   d) make

4. Did you get ready ....the final exam ?

a) from   b) of   c) for   d) at

5. Before leaving your exam paper, you should .... sure that you had answered all the questions.

a) give   b) forget   c) do   d) make

6. Can you .... some advice about how to solve this problem ?

a) pretend   b) attend   c) give   d) take

7. It's not good to .... at yourself at the mirror for a long time.

a) see b) look c) watch d) noise

8. When Rana was nine, she .... to speak two languages well.

a) is able to b) wasn't able to c) is able d) was able

9. You don't have any money to buy a present for your mum. You .... save some money.

a) mustn't b) had to c) have to d) shouldn't

10. (WB) She .... go to hospital after she broke her leg.

a) has to b) must c) had to d) should

---

(4) (WB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(look – a – takes – get - worried)

Taha lives a long way from the school. It (1) .... an hour for him to (2)........... home to his small village. He does not have a father and he is (3)................... because his mother is ill. So, when she gets home, he has to (4)................. after his younger brothers and sisters. He does not have much time to do his school work.

---

(5) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" A good listener "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises on Unit (6)

1) Complete the following dialogue :-

Salem is angry because he can't find his pen after the English lesson.

Usama : What's the matter, Salem ?

Salem : (1) ....

Usama : Have you looked for it in your bag ?

Salem : (2) .... It isn't there.

Usama : Don't worry. (3) ....

Salem : It isn't under the desk. I looked for it there.

Usama : (4) .... ?

Salem : No, I didn't look for it in my English book.

Usama : (5) ....?

Salem : It's on the bookshelf.

---

(2) (SB) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :-

I always wanted to be part of a certain group of popular students. One day, they suggestd that we cyberbully a boy in my class called Fawzi, so I wrote an ukind comment about him on social media.

I thought that my friends would think it was funny. I didn't realise that they were joking and I was the only one to write an unkind comment.

Fawzi read my comment and the next day he ddin't want to come to school. I had to tell my parents, and they couldn't understand why I did it. Then, the other students did not want include me in their group. I am so embarrassed about what I did.

However, I hope my experience will have a positive result, too. I didn't have to do what my friends suggested. You should thik before you do something. Some online messages can hurt people very badly.

I was able to say sorry to Fawzi the next day. He is very kind and now we are friends. So, you should choose your friends carefully and always be kind to people.

1- Explain why Fawzi didn't want to come to school. Mention two points.

....

2- Infer why the writer was embarrassed about what he had done. Give two reasons.

....

3- Do you think we shouldn't send bad online messages ? Why/ Why not? Mention two reasons.

....

....

4- The best title for the passage is ....

a) friendship b) messages c) cyberbullying d) think before you react

5- The writer thought that his friend would .... when they read his message.

a) cry b) fight c) laugh d) shout

6- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) Fawzi b) comment c) media d) class

3) Choose the correct answer :-

1. (WB) The review of the book has nothing .... to say about it. It sounds great.

a) negative b) positive c) good d) helpful

2. (WB) My grandmother always .... and makes us laugh when we visit her.

a) tells b) shouts c) cries d) jokes

3. You should tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to .... you online.

a) cyberbully b) support c) encourage d) help

4. She .... better after taking her medicine.

a) failed b) felt c) passed d) succeeded

5. Open the window, please. I cannot ....

a) sing b) breathe c) eat d) hear

6. When you make a mistake, you should .... sorry.

a) tell b) talk c) speak d) say

7. Don't .... me again. It's impolite of you.

a) help b) encourage c) interrupt d) revise

8. Yesterday, we .... to walk to school because my uncle drove us there.

a) didn't have to b) had to c) must d) should

9. .... when you were five ?

a) What you could do b) What could you do

c) What you can do d) What can you do

10. .... Hend able to ride a bike when she was six ?

a) Is b) Can c) Could d) Was

(3) Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- ....(be) you able to speak two languages at the age of ten ?

2- Wael .... (have to) sleep early yesterday.

3- Manar .... (not have to) make breakfast. Mum prepares it.

4- ....(Can) she go to school alone when she was at a primary one ?

(4) (WB) Complete the sentences with these words :-

(find – walk – go – broke - do)

Ola always worried about being ill. Then, a few months later, she had to go to hospital after she (1) ………….. her leg. She was able to (2)………….. home the next day but she wasn't able to (3) ……………. for many weeks. She could go to school, but of coure she couldn't (4) ………………. any sports until her leg was better.

---

(5) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" What we should do to be good listeners "

…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………
…………………………………………………………………………………………………

1) Min-Test on Unit (6) for Al-Azhar Students

1) Read and match :-

1. To "support" means	a. ( ) makes us laugh when we visit him.
2. My grandfather always jokes and	b. ( ) but you mustn't tell anyone!
3. He feels anxious because	c. ( ) something important that you have done.
4. Tarek had to go to the dentist	d. ( ) to help and encourage someone.
5. I tell you a secret,	e. ( ) because his teeth hurt.
	f. ( ) he has important exam tomorrow.

2) Read and correct the underlined words :-

1. Say me about it. What happened ? (........................)
2. It's serious to me that Ahmed is very good at running. (........................)
3. In the mountains, we were able see an amazing waterfall. (........................)
4. I have to get up early tomorrow because it is a holiday! (........................)

---

2) Use your brain, think smart :-

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :-

1. A/An .... is a person who is bewtween 13 and 19 years old.
   a) adult b) teenager c) baby d) grown up
2. She feels .... as her parents were died.
   a) lonely b) lunar c) lonliness d) loan
3. I .... a bedroom with my mother.
   a) divide b) share c) contain d) include
4. Always take a deep .... to relax well.
   a) breathe b) breathing c) breath d) breathed
5. He is .... worried about being ill.
   a) more b) any more c) no more d) once more

Mini-Test Unit (4)

1) Choose the correct answer : -

1. Tom used beautiful clours to .... the fence.

a) paint b) spend c) pretend d) trick

2. .... means to walk or drive behind someone.

a) Feed b) Follow c) Feel d) Drop

3. The filed had a long .... to stop the sheep from leaving or escaping.

a) fence b) fountain c) tap d) tree

4. The boy .... he was enjoying the work. He thought he could trick them.

a) turned b) pretended c) protected d) printed

5. Scientists often .... new and exciting things about space.

a) discover b) drop c) fail d) ring

6. They haven't seen their uncle since they .... young.

a) are b) were c) have d) was

---

2) Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- Last Friday, the boy ....(win) a prize.

2- Sama ....(have) finished her homework.

3- The doctor has been in this hospital ....(for) 2005.

4- Has she .... (never) seen a lion ?

---

3) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" What you do on holidays "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Mini-Test Unit (5)

1) Complete the following dialogue : -

Ali is asking Abudllah about his favourite footballer.

Ali : Hello Abdullah, what's your favourite sport ?

Abudullah : (1) ....

Ali : (2) ....?

Abdullah : My favourite footballer is Mo Salah.

Ali : (3) ....?

Abdullah : He plays for Liverpool.

Ali : Why do people like him ?

Abdullah : (4) ....

Ali : Does he score many goals ?

Abdullah : (5) ....

2) Choose the correct answer : -

1. He is the .... of a team of people and they have meetings every day.
   a) student b) manager c) servant d) cleaner
2. He .... working for the company three years ago.
   a) started b) looked c) made d) spent
3. Samar travelled to the USA to .... the award.
   a) sweep b) receive c) dry d) drop
4. She also gives speeches to other young engineers to .... their goals.
   a) feed b) need c) steal d) achieve
5. A .... is someone who works with maths.
   a) mathematician b) nurse c) vet d) volunteer
6. He hasn't receieved his job ....
   a) never b) yet c) for d) since

3) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" What you do on holidays "

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Mini-Test Unit (6)

1) Choose the correct answer : -

1. .... is something important that you have done.

a) Achievement b) Addiciton c) Appearance d) Attention

2. The review of the book has nothing ....to say about it. It sounds great.

a) positive b) negative c) ugly d) wasting

3. My grandmother always .... and makes us laugh when we visit her.

a) jokes b) fixes c) cooks d) drops

4. You msut tell your parents or the teacher if someone tries to ....you online.

a) cyberbully b) phone c) drive d) pick

5. Tarek doesn't want to go to Candad. He can't .... cold weather.

a) talk with b) cope with c) interrupt d) make up

6. You .... make noise at the hospital.

a) must b) mustn't c) should d) have to

---

2) Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :-

1- You .... (shouldn't) study your lessons.

2- They .... (has) to go to school early.

3- ....(Were) Hoda able to run fast when she was young ?

4- He didn't ....(had) to see a doctor.

---

3) Write a paragraph of about (110) words on :-

" What you didn't have to do at primary school "

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Main Book Topics موضوعات الكتابه الخاصه بوحدات الترم الأول بالكامل

Unit 1/ Lessons (1&2) **"Ismailia is an interesting city"**

Egypt has a lot of interesting places in all of its parts. Ismailia is one of Egypt's beautiful governorates. Although Ismailia does not have many historical sites, it has a lot of green areas. Everyone describes the green areas of Ismailia as "places of comfort". A lot of families go to Ismailia to spend their holidays. There are attractive buildings, interesting monuments and lots of gardens. The best thing about Ismailia is its calmness. The city has little pollution, no factories and a little of traffic. The weather there is fine; not hot or cold most of the year. There are lots of things you can do in Ismailia, you can sit on beaches, go swimming and enjoy some water sports.

To conclude, I advise all people who want to have fun and enjoy their time to visit Ismailia. You will never get bored !

Lessons (3&4)

From : mazen2004@gmail.com
To : heshamprince@gmail.com
Subject : "new Egyptian cities"

Dear Hesham,

How are you ? I miss you so much ! Isn't it the time for coming back ? You've gone to Tunisia for a long time and nearly you've forgotten all your friends. What I want to say that our great country has changed a lot. A lot of fantastic new cities have been built, so we can enjoy our time together visiting those new Egyptian cities. We can visit the New Administrative Capital, Al Fatah El Aleem Mosque or go to Hurghada. The new school year starts soon and I hope you come back before it. I miss our days. Please, contact and tell me what you're going to do. See you soon. **Yours, Mazen**

To : sara26@yahoo.com
From : alaa22@gmail.com
Subject : "invitation to the exhibition"

Dear Sara,

How are you ? I miss you so much ! At first, I write this email to tell you that my family always ask me about you. They've been in love with you since you met them on last year's holiday. Second, I'd like to invite you to visit the exhibition with my family. It's a good chance to have fun and let all my family see you. The new exhibition has a lot of art works and I know you love the works of art and have too much knowledge about galleries. All my relatives who have recently visited the exhibition say that it has a fantastic collection of paintings and drawings. Those works were made by famous artists. I want you not to skip this. With my best wishes. **Yours, Alaa**

Test unit (1) "What you do on one day of the week "

In fact, I have too many tasks to do during the week. On last Friday, I had an idea. I wanted to visit my mother's oldest aunt. She is a very kind person. I remembered staying with her when I was young. She always talked to me and told me interesting stories about my father and mother. What I love and make me remember her from time to time is that she has a very good quality. I cannot find today with a lot of people; she has a very wide chest and can answer to all my questions. She never gets bored. I think this was the thing that made me want to visit her last week. We had good time and again she told me exciting and new stories. I think I will never forget her and I want to visit her more and more.

Unit (2)

General Exercises on Lessons (3 &4)

From : seifsalah@yahoo.com.

To : john@gmail.com

Subject : Egyptian tourist attractions

Dear John,

How are you ? You asked me before about Egypt and its history. I remember you asked me about what places you can visit in it, too. Egypt has a lot of tourist attractions. Egypt also has worldwide tourist cities. We have Sharm El-Sheikh and Hurghada and they are visited by millions of people every year. We have beaches you will never find in other places. We have hotels with good quality. I can't say that our water sports activities are rare, but I can say the nature and its beauty we have is rare. We have great historical museums and temples in Luxor and Aswan. All I mentioned above is few! But when you visit Egypt, you'll learn more and more. I hope to see you soon.

Yours, Seif

Lessons (5&6)

" **Something I bought online** "

Everything in life; big or small, old or new has positive sides and negative sides as well ! No one can deny that online shopping has become more and more popular nowadays. Many people prefer it because it is easier and quicker than traditional shopping. As I am interested in music and it is my favourite hobby, I decided to buy a piano! A friend of mine told me that there is a very good online website for a music shop whose fame is fantastic. When I saw their goods and the musical instruments they displayed, I was astonished by some pianos they offered, so I ordered one. In fact, the piano arrived one day after the order. But when I opened it, I found out it was broken ! Of course, I was angry and I made a complaint. I learned that things have advantages and disadvantages !

Test on unit (2) **"The best and worst items of technology in my house"**

Technology has become a symbol of progress especially at our homes. Of course technology has changed our life and it is a must to use it in modern life. Smart TV sets, mobile phones and laptop computers are almost in all of our homes. And as it is always said, "For every plus, there is a minus!" These technological devices have made our life easier and more enjoyable. On one hand, they tell us about what happens in our world, makes us watch football matches all over the world and follow our likes by an easy and quick way. But on the other hand, they have made us lazy, feel bored most of the time and somehow away from our real life! People look at those screens more than they look at themselves ! Even children have become busy playing online games and watching videos. Isn't it strange ?

Unit (3) **Lessons (1&2)** **" What I can do to help people in my community "**

A man who is living for just himself or herself is not living! I think our community is a part of our life and it is a must to cooperate for it and for solving the problems it suffers from. At my school, there are some students who have disabilities at different parts of their bodies. Some can't move well, others can't see well. I though and thought about them and at last I had an idea for helping them. I went to the school headmaster and suggested a way to lighten the burdens of them and their parents for coming at school. I suggested all students in all classes at school should donate money for building a special area for them and making special roads without stairs for them. The headmaster welcomed my idea and thanked me and promised that he will work for it. Isn't that a small help for our community ?

Lessons (3&4)

To : aymanking@gmail.com

From : mahmoudhero@yahoo.com

Subject: "some community problems"

Dear Ayman,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are happy and in good health. I write this email to tell you some problems in my community. I have some friends who suffer from the absence of thought and aim. They do not have real goals to achieve. All they want to sing songs and play games every day. They never study and their parents do not know what to do. I think it is a problem at our community that we should find a solution to it. Don't you have any suggestions ? Please, write to me if you have any solutions. Waiting for your reply! With my best wishes.

Yours,

Mahmoud

Lessons (5&6) **(SB)**

"A message to a social network service page about a community project "

We all love our community and want to give services to help improve it. I and some of my friends decided to meet to discuss how to do a project to help our community. At our meeting, we decided to start a local charity, where people can donate food to families who need it. We got some ideas from a network for our project. Everyone in our community who can offer food to help in this aim should be cooperative and helpful. We can design pages on the internet, call for anyone who can help us. Social work is a great issue that deserves to start working on it. We need volunteers to help us plan and complete this project. Please, we should not neglect that to be a developed country and improve our community.

Test on Unit (3) **" A person who made a difference in my community "**

As I was young, I had little experience in life. I had a lot of problems and I could not find solutions for most of them. I wasted too much time of my life and regretted that. One day, I met a friend who was older than me. His name is Helmi. Really, he is a great person. He listened to all my problems carefully and told me about some of his own problems which were a lot greater than mine. The strange thing that he faced all his problems with great satisfaction and hold me he always said Thanks God. He told me that the strong man is the person who can face and overcome, not to give up. At last, he could solve all his problems by working hard. I learned from him that hard work is the key to solve any problem. From this time ad I kept Helmi's advice in my mind and I worked harder and harder and I've never forgotten his advice.

Unit (4) **"My experiences"**

Have you ever climbed a mountain ? Have you ever eaten a snake ? In fact, everyone in life has their own special experiences who will never forget. My first experience that I will never forget is when a friend of mine invited me to have lunch at his house. This friend lives in Marsa Matrouh. I travelled and had a very delicious meal. It was grilled meat and I was very happy with the food. When I finished, I asked him what kind of meat that we had. To my surprise, he told me it was meat of a snake! I told him how come! After that I knew it is easy to have snakes for meals at Matrouh. Another experience is when I travelled in a truck and an officer on the road stopped me and took me to the police station. He thought I was a criminal. After my parents came, I was set free. To conclude, everyone has some experiences which sometimes he or she may learn from or experience itself may teach him or her.

Lessons (3/4)

To : omarhedar@gmail.com

From : adelmunir@yahoo.com

Sbuejcet : "a day I spent at the Pyramids"

Dear Omar,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are in good health. Last week, our school went on a trip to the Pyramids. It was my first time to visit and see the Pyramids. I spent a very beatufiul day there. I enjoyed riding a camel and a horse. There were a lot of tourists from all over the world. I spoke with them in English. Our great ancient Egyptians were really great buiders and engineers. I knew that they built the Pyramids at first as tombs for themselves. I'd like to invite you to come to Giza and visit them. Really, you will enjoy and learn a lot of things. I hope to see you soon. With my best wishes.

Yours, Adel

Lessons (5&6)

"Things that I have achieved"

It is said that situations are the best teacher. When I was young, I had a dream to be the best student in English, because I love my English teacher and he always encourages me. I wanted to be perfect in English like him. After school, I always saved my pocket money to buy English books of higher leves than I am in. I always go home and finish my study, then I read these books, write my notes and talk to myself in English. I've learnt all about grammar, vocabulary and writing paragraphs. In monthly tests at school, I always get the full mark. My class teacher asked me to talk in English in the morning school broadcasting. All my friends admired me and told me that I'm the best in English. I've got the full mark in English in all my study years and I've decided to be an English teacher when I grow up.

Test unit (4)

" A happy event that happened to me recently "

I had an experience I will never forget. I always liked walking in the fields, on my own. My mother used to advise me not to do so, but I thought I was right. One day, I was alone in a faraway part of the fields. It was very early in the morning and there weren't so many farmers there. Suddenly, I saw a group of five or six lage dogs in front of me. I wasn't

afraid at all. When the dogs got nearer to me, I wasn't afraid and I was standstill. After a minute, the dogs moved away. To my surprise, I was being watched by the field owner. He asked a worker to come and asked me to go to him. When I met him, he was happy that I was brave and gave me some beautiful presents for both my parents and me.

Unit (5)

" My role model"

Samar Abdelfattah is my role model. As a young child, Samar wanted to be an astronaut. After she finished school, she went to Cairo University to study space engineering. Whiel Samar was at university, a space technology company had a competition. Students had to design a form of transport that travels above the ground. It is called "hyperloop". Samar decided to enter the competition and asked other engineering students from university to join her team. Teams of students from universities all around world entered, but Samar's team was the only one from Africa or the Middle East that worked hard on the design and won the competition. Samar travelled to America to receive the award. I really admired her.

Lessons (3&4)

To : monasaleh@gmail.com

From : rehammagdi@yahoo.com.

Subject: "The importance of helping other people"

Dear Mona,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are in good health. I'd like to tell you that yesterday evening, I was travelling on a train from Aswan to Cairo. One of the passengers suddenly fainted and fell on the aisle of the train. People got worried and asked the train inspector to come. He thought that the passenger was in great danger. Luckily, one of the passengers on another carriage came to help. He wasn't a doctor but he had an idea of first aid. He put his hands on the man's chest and began to press hard. After some time, the man opened his eyes and got better. Without helping others, many bad things would have happened.

Yours,

Reham

Lessons (5&6)

" A famous person "

Fatma Ali El-Banna was born in Alexandira in 2003. As a child, she loved learning about science and wanted to be a great scientist. She learned more and more about

science as well as how to look after the environment and Egypt's culture. She came first in Egypt in the NASA International Space Apps Challenge. She became very famous when she found a natural way for villages to clean the dirty water. The project can also help to stop pollution. In 2021, Fatma's project won fourth place in the society's international Science and Englineering Fair. She became very famous not only in Egypt but all over the world as well. Now, she wants to do more things to help her country. I admire Fatma and all her achievements.

Test Unit (5)

" A biography about a person I admire "

Mohamed Salah is the person who I admire most. He was born in a village in Gharbia. He is polite and hardworking. He has aplyed for many teams. He also plays for the Egyptian National Team. He scored many goals for our team. He played for Roma Team. No, he plays for Liverpool in England and scored many goalss. Liverpool is a very good team. I like the way by which they play. Players are so active and present great shows and good results. This happened after Salah's joining to them. Salah added much speed to the team. Salah has got a lot important awards in Africa and Europe.

Unit (6) Lessons (1&2)

"Social media in our life"

Technology is very important in our life. It has made life easier. An important type of modern technological developments is the social media and its role in our life. Of course no one can deny the role that the social media plays in our daily life. It is also a comfortable way to communicate with each other either on the local level or the world wide level. If one of our relatives succeeded, the first thing that tells us this piece of news is the social media. But it is said that for every plust, there is a minus. Social media can waste our time if we became addicted to it. It offers great ways to attract our attention and make us away from our main tasks. If we are not careful, we may go with it to distant areas that return to us with negative sides.

Lessons (3&4)

To : seiframzi@gmail.com

From : shehab15@yahoo.com

Subject: "being midful"

Dear Seif,

How are you ? I hope you and your family are in good health. I heard that you're somehow anxious about your school work. I'd like to advise you to relax, be calm and concentrate on your study. This can come by mindfulness. You should have breaks between your study sessions. You can spend your weekend at a different place with cheerful people. Don't try to talk or hear about peoples' problems. Being mindful helps you to achieve great progress in your life. I hope you get better soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,
Shehab

Lessons (5&6)

" A good listener "

No one can deny that personal problems are a thing that anyone lives with. The most important thing is to learn from our mistakes and this cannot be achieved ecept by listening to other people's pieces of advice. Especially people who are older than us and had a lot of experiences in their lives. To be a good listener is a very important quality one should have. It is a skill, because you can choose who you listen to and what to be listened at. The intelligent person is the one listens more than he talks. God has created us with one mouth but with two ears. This is a message sometimes people do not care about. This message means that we should listen more than talk. Listening is a very important teacher. Through it, we can find solutions to problems, do useful things and be successful. To conclude, we should listen to learn.

Test Unit (6)

"What we should do to be good listeners"

Talking is free but listening is gold ! Listening has many ways and shapes. We can listen to people, programmes, radios and books. To be a good listener, you should listen without interrupting the one who is talking and ask questions to make sure you really understand the problem which you face. You should also try to help them explain their feelings more clearly. On the other hand you shouldn't talk about something else when you listen to someone. Don't forget listening to mindful and educated people who are interested in your success and progress is golden. This can be found with different persons like your teachers, your parents and your friends. When you listen to them, of course many things will change at your life.

Skills Part (1)

1. Mr. Hassan earns .... money. He is in need of your help.

a) little b) a little c) a few d) much

2. How .... meat do you need, Madam ?

a) a lot b) many c) much d) little

3. I must buy some bread. I hardly have .... left the kitchen.

a) much b) any c) many d) some

4. He doesn't like city life as there's always too .... noise.

a) many b) much c) little d) a little

5. Two hundred pounds .... enough for today's spending.

a) are b) have c) is d) were

6. There aren't .... hotels in this town. Only two.

a) some b) any c) many d) much

7. .... people live in the country today than in the past.

a) Little b) Least c) Few d) Fewer

8. Five hundred metres .... a long distance to walk.

a) haven't b) hasn't c) isn't d) aren't

9. ow .... do you have ?

a) much money b) few money c) many money d) little money

10. ow .... people are coming to the party ?

a) some b) many c) much d) any